

W.I.V. 1686

FUNC

ชั้นมัธยม



425
ก292ง

A.R. GI

425
ก

W.I.V. 1686



๑๒ก.ก.๒๕๐๕

๑๒ก.ก.๒๕๐๕

๑๒ก.ก.๒๕๐๕

42

ก

พิมพ์ครั้งแรก พ.ศ. 2505

สงวนลิขสิทธิ์

พิมพ์ที่ห้องต้นส่วนจำกัด อักษรเจริญทัศน์ (แผนกการพิมพ์)

๑๙ สี่ราชนครินทร์ ถนนบำรุงเมือง พระนคร โทร. 24028

นายสุทัศน์ เทวอักษร ผู้พิมพ์ โฆษณา 2505

คำนำ

ข้าพเจ้าเคยได้ยิน บรรดาครูและนักเรียนเป็นจำนวนมาก ต่างก็บ่นกันถึงเรื่องความพลาดหวังในการทำอะไร อย่างไร เขาจึงจะทำให้ นักเรียนของเขาและจะทำอย่างไร ตัวของนักเรียนเอง จึงมีความรู้พอแก่ชน หรือมีความรู้ดีพอแก่การสอบไล่ได้ ข้าพเจ้าได้เก็บเอาความรู้สึกละไว้ในใจเป็นเวลานานมาแล้ว แต่ก็ยังมองไม่เห็นทางใดที่จะแบ่งเบาความรู้สึกล่อล้อนำเห็นใจนี้ได้

โดยอาศัยความรู้สึกละเป็นมูลฐาน ข้าพเจ้าจึงเขียนหนังสือเล่มนี้ขึ้นมา ต่อจากเล่ม ม.ศ. 1 ด้วยเจตนาที่จะผ่อนคลายความรู้สึกหนักใจนั้น ให้ลดน้อยถอยลงได้บ้าง ตามสมควร และความรู้สึกจะเบาบางลงได้แค่ไหนและเพียงไรนั้น ขึ้นอยู่กับ ความร่วมมือ อันดีของ นักเรียนเอง และความกรุณาของคุณครู อาจารย์ ผู้ทำหน้าที่ รับผิดชอบวิชาญโดยเฉพาะ เพราะหนังสือเล่มนี้จะเปนเครื่องมือคอยรับใช้สนองความต้องการของท่านอยู่ตลอดเวลา

การสอบของนักเรียนส่วนใหญ่ ขึ้นอยู่กับการเขียน และการตั้งคำถาม คำตอบ พอสมควร ฉะนั้นการเขียนหนังสือเล่มนี้จึงมีจุดมุ่งหมายไปในแนวนั้น และดำเนิน

ไปตามแนวหลักสูตร ของกระทรวง ศึกษาธิการ อย่างเคร่ง
 ครัด โดยมุ่งคำนึงถึงประโยชน์ที่จะอำนวยให้แก่บรรดา
 นักเรียนทั้งปัจจุบันและอนาคตเป็นส่วนสำคัญ ยิ่งกว่านั้น
 ข้าพเจ้ายังมีความปรารถนาที่จะให้หนังสือเล่มนี้ ทำหน้าที่
 เสมือนหนังสือ สะพาน ประสาน ความรู้ ระหว่าง ชน มัธยม-
 ศึกษาตอนต้นกับชนมัธยมศึกษาตอนปลาย ให้ไปแนว
 เดียวกันอีกด้วย ฉะนั้น ข้าพเจ้าจึงมีความหวังว่า ความ
 ปรารถนาอันดีจากส่วนลึกของหัวใจของข้าพเจ้านี้ คงจะ
 ได้รับการพิจารณาจาก คุณครู อาจารย์ และนักเรียน
 เป็นอย่างดี

ข้าพเจ้าเขียนหนังสือเล่มนี้ ด้วยความระมัดระวังเป็น
 อย่างยิ่ง ดำเนินไปที่ละขั้นๆ จากง่ายไปหายาก เพิ่ม
 จำนวนศัพท์ขึ้น โดยอาศัยหนังสืออ่านเป็นหลัก เพื่อไม่
 ให้ยากเกินไป และให้มีความง่ายเหมาะสมกันกับชน
 ข้าพเจ้าเขียนคำอธิบายเป็นภาษาไทย แต่ก็พยายามให้
 ง่ายและรัดกุมเป็นที่สุด เพื่อประโยชน์แก่การเข้าใจแต่
 อย่างเดียว

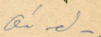
อนึ่ง ข้าพเจ้าใคร่ขอโอกาสนี้ กล่าวคำขอบขอบคุณท่าน
 อาจารย์ คุณดี มีสมมนต์ ผู้ซึ่งเป็นเสมือนหนังสือพิมพ์กรร
 ของข้าพเจ้า ท่านศาสตราจารย์ ทองสุข พงศ์ทัต ผู้ซึ่งเป็น

ก

กำลังใจของข้าพเจ้า และท่านอาจารย์หลวง จรัสครุการ
ผู้ซึ่งข้าพเจ้าเคารพในฐานะที่เป็นอาจารย์ของข้าพเจ้า และ
เป็นผู้ให้คำแนะนำ แก่ข้าพเจ้าเป็นอย่างดี หากคุณ
ประโยชน์อันใดหนังสือเล่มนี้จะพวงม ข้าพเจ้าขอส่วนบุญ
น จงบันดาลให้ทุกๆ ท่านที่ข้าพเจ้าได้กล่าวมาแล้ว ประ
สพแต่ความสุข ความเจริญช้วนรินทร์

ถึงอย่างไรก็ตาม ข้าพเจ้าขอออมรับ คำแนะนำ
แจ้ง อันพึงเป็นประโยชน์แก่การศึกษาในวิชานี้ จาก
บรรดาท่านผู้ที่ปรารภนาตังหลายด้วย

ขอขอบคุณ



Contents

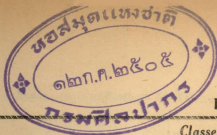
Introduction	Page
Lesson	
1. Class of Nouns	1
Countable Nouns	1
Uncountable Nouns	1
2. Singular and Plural Nouns	4
3. Possessive Nouns	12
Formation of possessive Nouns... ..	12
Meaning Signified	15
4. Nouns and Articles	17
Indefinite Article	17
Definite Article	18
5. Uses of Article "The"	21
6. Uses of Article (Cont.) "A" or "An"	28
"Some" and "Any"	32
"What....."	38
"What a"	38
"A few," "A little"	39
7. Personal Pronouns	45
Uses of Personal Pronouns*... ..	45
"It"	49
8. Reflexive and Emphatic Pronouns... ..	51
9. Possessive Pronouns and Adjectives	56

10.	Demonstrative Pronouns and Adjectives	61
	Forms of Demonstratives	61
	Uses of Demonstrative : "this,"	62
	"that," "these," "those," "one," "the former,"	
	"the latter," "such," "other," "others"	
11.	Distributive Pronouns and Adjectives... ..	68
	Uses : "each," "every," "everyone,"	
	"everything," "either," "neither"	68
12.	Quantitative Adjectives and Pronouns	73
	Forms	74
	Uses : "one," "ones," "other," "others,"	
	"some," "any," "anybody," "anyone,"	
	"anything," "anywhere,"	74
	"No," "None," "much," "many,"	85
	"a lot of," "a great deal of,"	
	"little," "few"	88
13.	The Twenty-Four Helping Verbs	90
	Forms	90
	Infinitives, Present Participles,	91
	Past Participles	
	Compound Verbs	92
	Negative Formation	96
	Interrogative Formation	98
	Formation of Short Answers	100
	Formation of Question-Tags	102
	Addition to Remarks... ..	104
	Agreement	105
	Disagreement	107

14.	Interrogative Pronouns	109
15.	Interrogative Adjectives	116
16.	Interrogative Adverbs	121
17.	The Present Continuous Tense	133
	Active and Passive	
	Immediate Future	142
18.	The Present Simple Tense	145
	Active and Passive	
19.	The Past Simple Tense	162
	Active and Passive	
	"Used to"	174
20.	The Present Perfect Tense	177
	Active and Passive	
	"Since," "For"	184
21.	The Past Continuous Tense	109
	Active and Passive	
22.	The Past Perfect Tense	197
	Active and Passive	
23.	The Future Simple Tense	203
	Active and Passive	
	Coloured Future	208
24.	No Future Tense After Temporal	215
	and Conditional Conjunctions	
	Tenses in If-Clauses	219
25.	Tenses and Times	226

(4)

26.	Uses of Common Prepositions	238
	Prepositions easily Confused	241
	Compound Prepositions	248
27.	Relative Pronouns	255
28.	Relative Adverbs	264
29.	Interrogative Links	270
30.	Adjectives and Adverbs	276
31.	Positions of Adverbs	283
32.	Infinitives	292
33.	Gerund	302
34.	Participle	306
35.	Direct and Indirect Speech	312
	Composition 1	319
	Composition 2	321
	Composition 3	323



LESSON 1

Classes of Nouns

Note : **Nouns** แบ่งออกเป็นหมวดใหญ่ ๆ ได้ดังต่อไปนี้

(a) **Countable Nouns** : เป็นชื่อของ **Nouns** ที่นับได้
หรือเปลี่ยนพจน์ (Number) ได้ตามหลักเกณฑ์และตาม
ความหมาย ภายในกรอบของประโยค

e.g. 1. *A husband is a man.*

Husbands are men.

2. *A rose is a flower.*

Roses are flowers.

(b) **Uncountable Nouns** : เป็นชื่อของ **Nouns** ที่นับ
ไม่ได้และเปลี่ยนพจน์ไม่ได้ ต้องเป็นเอกพจน์ (Singular
Number) เท่านั้น ตามความหมายภายในกรอบของ
ประโยค **Nouns** เหล่านี้โดยมากเป็นชื่อของ

(1) **เนื้อวัตถุ** (Mass) : water, silver, air, etc.

(2) **อาการ** (Manner) : motion, walk, play, etc.

(3) **ภาวะ** (State) : youth, childhood, kingship, etc.

(4) **คุณสมบัติ** (Quality) : goodness, wisdom, etc.

- e.g. 1. **Iron** is heavier than **wood**.
2. **Water** is more necessary than **wine**.
3. **Play** is as good as **work**.
4. **Duty** comes before **pleasure**.
5. **Health** and **wealth** often come together.

Exercises

Say which are **uncountable**, or **countable** nouns:—

1. The girl lives in the village.
2. Wind is the air in motion.
3. James pushed Mary into the room.
4. The cloth is made of cotton.
5. Those boys come to school on foot.
6. Who is the lady at the door?
7. London is in England.
8. He is an American, not English.
9. Will you please give me a glass of water?
10. The China Wall is made of stone and bricks.
11. What is the difference between heat and cold?
12. Man can hardly live without love and hope.
13. Day and night are just like joy and sorrow.
14. Real life is that with security and freedom.
15. Make hay while the sun shines.

Note : **Nouns** ที่นับได้มีพจน์ (Number) ย่อยดังต่อไปนี้ :—

(a) **Singular Number** (เอกพจน์) : หมายถึง **Nouns** ที่เป็นชื่อของ ของสิ่งเดียว คน ๆ เดียว

- e.g. 1. His *hat* is on his *head*.
 2. A *hen* lays an *egg* at a time.
 3. The *song* was sung by the *singer*.

(b) **Plural Number** (พหูพจน์) : หมายถึง **Nouns** ที่เป็นชื่อ ของบุคคลหรือสิ่งของมากกว่าหนึ่ง

- e.g. 1. *Cats* catch *mice*.
 2. Dark *clouds* have silver *lines*.
 3. *Flies* are on the *feet* of the *buffaloes*.

Exercises

Say which are *singular* and *plural* nouns :—

1. A student is a boy or a girl.
2. Tigers are beasts of prey.
3. Birds build nests in trees.
4. Fish are found in rivers.
5. A dog is a good friend of man.
6. Camels are the ships of deserts.
7. Banknotes are promises of money.
8. We dig a garden with a spade and fork.
9. Letters can be written with typewriters.
10. The sun is much larger than the earth.

LESSON 2

Singular and Plural Nouns

Note : การเปลี่ยน Singular เป็น Plural Nouns มีหลักเกณฑ์ดังต่อไปนี้

(1) เติม “s” ลงหลัง Singular Nouns

- e.g. 1. The *carpenter* made the *table*.
The *carpenters* made the *tables*.
2. The *house* had a *lawn*.
The *houses* had *lawns*.

(2) เติม “es” ลงหลัง Singular Nouns ที่ลงท้ายด้วย o, s, sh, ch, x, และ z.

- e.g. 1. The *negro* planted a *potato*.
The *negroes* planted *potatoes*.
2. The *ass* stood by the *bush*.
The *asses* stood by the *bushes*.
3. The *box* had a *brush*.
The *boxes* had *brushes*.
4. The *church* was near the *blaze* of a *fire*.
The *churches* were near the *blazes* of *fires*.

แต่ Nouns บางคำถึงแม้ว่าลงท้ายด้วย “o” เราก็
เติมแค่ “s” เท่านั้น เมื่อทำเป็น Plural Nouns,

- e.g. 1. Have you seen the *photo* of the *piano* ?
Have you seen the *photos* of the *pianos* ?
2. A *dynamo* can produce electricity.
Dynamos can produce electricity.

(3) เปลี่ยน "y" ที่ลงท้าย Singular Nouns และ
หน้า "y" เป็นพยัญชนะ (Consonant) เป็น "ies"

- e.g. 1. The *fly* flew to the *lily*.
The *flies* flew to the *lilies*.
2. I heard a *story* about the *army*.
I heard *some stories* about the *armies*.
แต่ถ้าหน้า "y" เป็นสระเติมแค่ "s" เท่านั้น
- e.g. The *donkey* stood in the *valley*.
The *donkeys* stood in the *valleys* . ?

(4) เปลี่ยน "f" หรือ "fe" ท้าย Singular Nouns
เป็น "ves"

- e.g. 1. Your *wife* put a *loaf* on the *shelf*.
Your *wives* put *some loaves* on the *shelves*.
2. They killed the *wolf* with the *knife*.
They killed the *wolves* with the *knives*.

แต่มี Nouns บางคำลงท้ายด้วย "f" หรือ "fe" เรา
ก็เติมแค่ "s" เท่านั้น เมื่อเปลี่ยนเป็น Plural Nouns.

- e.g. 1. The **roof** of the **house** is under the **cliff**.
The **roofs** of the **houses** are under the **cliffs**.
2. The **chief** kept **a handkerchief** in the **safe**.
The **chiefs** kept **some handkerchiefs** in the **safes**.

(5) Singular Nouns บางคำเปลี่ยนสระภายในเมื่อ
เป็น Plural Nouns.

- e.g. 1. The **foot** of the **man** hurt him badly.
The **feet** of the **men** hurt them badly.
2. The **tooth** of the **woman** was loose.
The **teeth** of the **women** were loose.
3. The **mouse** ran under the **goose**.
The **mice** ran under the **geese**.

(6) โดยการเติม "en" ลงท้าย Singular Nouns
บางคำ

- e.g. **A child** can look after **an ox**.
Children can look after **oxen**.

(7) Singular Nouns บางคำมีรูปคงเดิม เมื่อเปลี่ยน
เป็น Plural Nouns.

- e.g. 1. I saw **a fish** in the pond.
I saw **some fish** in the pond.
2. **A sheep** and **a deer** are animals.
Sheep and **deer** are animals.

Exercises

A. Make the following sentences plural :-

Note : (1) Tense Singular Plural.

Present **is** **are**

Past **was** **were**

(2) ยี่สิบ "a" หรือ "an" นำหน้า Plural

Nouns.

e.g. 1. The **girl is** my good **friend**.

The **girls are** my good **friends**.

2. **An orange is a fruit**.

Oranges are fruits.

1. The lady is the man's wife.
2. A piano is a musical instrument.
3. The soldier was killed in the battle.
4. A mule is like a donkey.
5. A monkey is on a tree.
6. The picture was painted by the painter.
7. A deer is a prey of a tiger.
8. The bird was in the bush.
9. A leaf is green in the rainy season.
10. The gardener is watering the flower.
11. Your child is sitting on the bench.
12. The navvy was sitting under the tree.

B. *Make the following sentences plural :-*

Note :	Tense	Singular	Plural.
	Present	There is	There are
	Past	There was	There were

e.g. There **is** an **elephant** in the **forest**.

There **are** **elephants** in the **forests**.

1. There is a snake in the hole.
2. There is a big map on the wall.
3. There was a soldier in the camp.
4. There was a mountain on the North.
5. There is a telephone on the road.
6. There was a school in the town.
7. There is a castle at the foot of the hill.
8. There was a letter in the box.
9. There is a temple in the province.
10. There was a bungalow on the hill.

C. *Make the following sentences singular :-*

e.g. 1. There **are** usually **some** great **changes** in life.

There is usually **a** great **change** in life.

2. What **are** the **proofs** of the crime ?

What **is** the **proof** of the crime ?

1. Flower-gardens are beautiful places.
2. Were there many persons there ?
3. Crows are large black birds.
4. The buildings were painted green.

5. Axes are used for cutting trees.
6. There are bamboos at the end of the garden.
7. Foxes are wild animals.
8. There are some sheep in the meadow.
9. The cities were burning furiously.
10. Lice are small insects living on the skin.
11. The children are looking at the dwarfs.
12. There are some bushes at the front lawn.

D. *Make the following sentences plural :-*

Note :	Tense	Singular	Plural.
	Present	has	have
	Past	had	had.

e.g. A **mouse** **has** a long **tail**.

Mice **have** long **tails**.

1. The bee has a queen.
2. A knife has a handle.
3. A hand has a thumb.
4. The lady has a new car.
5. The shirt has been sold.
6. A flower has a colour and smell.
7. The class had already begun with the lesson.
8. Has the thief been caught ?
9. Had the key been found ?
10. Has the hen laid an egg ?
11. There has always been a noise outside.
12. A person has often been there.

E. *Make the following sentences plural :-*

Note :	Tense	Singular	Plural.
	Present	does	do
	Past	did	did.

e.g. **An Englishman does** not live on rice.
Englishmen do not live on rice.

1. When does the volcano explode ?
2. A human eye does not see in the dark.
3. A bad dog does not deserve a good bone.
4. A good wish never spoils a good heart.
5. Does the bus pass by the school ?
6. Did the Japanese draw the picture ?
7. A barking dog does not bite.
8. Does your loose tooth hurt you ?
9. The traveller does not work as a spy.
10. How does a dynamo work to produce electricity ?

F. *Make the following sentences plural :-*

Note :	(a) Tense	Singular	Plural.
	Present	says	say
	Present	cries	cry
	Present	wishes	wish
	present	goes	go.

(b) เมื่อเปลี่ยน Subject เป็น Plural ต้องเปลี่ยน
 กริยาเป็นรูปปกติ ใน Present Simple Tense. จึง
 ดังเกิดหลักการเปลี่ยนใน (a)

e.g. The *housemaid washes a plate.*

The *housemaids wash some plates.*

1. A butterfly flies in the open.
2. The negro studies English every day.
3. An Englishman pronounces the words correctly.
4. The mother misses the child very much.
5. A beggar passes by the way every morning.
6. A cashier cashes money.
7. A policeman catches a thief.
8. The school-keeper closes the gate every evening.
9. A bee buzzes in the early morning.
10. A correspondent replies to a letter.

G. *Make the following sentences singular :-*

e.g. *Witches use charms.*

A witch uses a charm.

1. Teachers teach lessons.
2. Good boys mix with good friends.
3. Trains travel on rail-lines.
4. Builders build houses.
5. Ticals buy more than stangs.
6. Generals command armies.
7. Crows eat even dead animals.
8. Fish breathe through gills.
9. Hungry boys enjoy large meals.
10. Children need sympathy and understanding.

LESSON 3

Possessive Nouns

Note 1. **Possessive Nouns** หมายถึง **Nouns** ที่แสดงการเป็นเจ้าของของ **Nouns** อื่น ๆ

- e.g. 1. *Tom's* book was stolen.
2. *The girls'* school is closed.
3. His *father-in-law's* house is there.

Note 2. **Formation of Possessive Nouns** : ในการที่จะแสดงว่า **Noun** หนึ่ง **Noun** ใด เป็นเจ้าของ **Nouns** อื่น ๆ ต้องถือหลักเกณฑ์ดังนี้ :-

(a) เติม **Apostrophe and "s"** ('s) ลงหลัง **Nouns** ที่เป็นชื่อของสิ่งมีชีวิต

- e.g. 1. The *man's* arm was lost in the battle.
2. The *children's* toys were made in Japan.
3. I found *James's* pen in the drawer.

(b) เติมแต่เพียง **Apostrophe** (') ลงหลัง **Plural Nouns** ที่ลงท้ายด้วย "s"

- e.g. 1. The **boys'** school will be opened next week.
 2. The **dogs'** barking noises disturb my sleep.
 3. The **asses'** tails were blown off by the shells.

(c) เติมแต่เพียง Apostrophe (') ลงหลังชื่อวรรณกรรมต่าง ๆ ที่ลงท้ายด้วย "s"

- e.g. 1. **Keats'** poetry is very well known.
 2. The **Archimedes'** law is very famous.

(d) คำนามผสม (Compound Nouns) และชื่อเกียรติตำแหน่ง (Title) ก็ให้ถือว่าเป็น Noun คำเดียว และปฏิบัติไปตามหลักเกณฑ์ที่กล่าวมาแล้ว

- e.g. 1. That is my **brother-in-law's** farm.
 2. During **Rama the First's** reign Thailand was at war with Burma.

Exercises

A. Put into the possessive form:—

Note : จงตั้งคิดว่า Possessive Nouns นั้นเป็น Singular หรือ Plural เพื่อจะได้นำเอาหลักเกณฑ์มาใช้ได้

ลูกของ และเมื่อเปิดย่นเป็น Possessive Nouns
 ของ Article ทอยทวน Nouns ที่ถูกเป็นเจ้าของ

ของออก

e.g. When is the *birthday of Henry* ?

When is *Henry's birthday* ?

1. That man is the driver of Mr. James.
2. Today is the birthday of the King.
3. Do you love the music of Beethoven ?
4. Which is the tie of your brother ?
5. Who is the secretary of Mr. William ?
6. The tails of horses are long.
7. The armies of Hitler were beaten by the Allied.
8. That is the car of my friend.
9. I don't like to see the tears of that lady.
10. I saw the nests of the birds on that tree.
11. The shop of Boon Lert is at the corner.
12. The heart of a man is as big as his fist.

B. Answer the following sentences, using **possessive nouns** :-

e.g. *Whose* mother is your grandmother ?

My grandmother is my *mother's* mother.

1. Whose mother is your aunt ?
2. Whose husband is your brother-in-law ?
3. Whose son is your cousin ?
4. Whose son is your nephew ?

5. Whose daughter is your niece ?
6. Whose daughter is your sister ?
7. Whose husband is your father ?
8. Whose wife is your mother ?
9. Whose second wife is your step-mother ?
10. Whose husband is your son-in-law ?

C. Change the singular words into plural words wherever possible :-

e.g. It is the **boy's** bicycle.
They are the **boys'** bicycles.

1. Is that the man's hat ?
2. The cook's knife is on the table.
3. The girl's friend is from New York.
4. The student's pen has been found.
5. I am going to buy the farmer's horse.
6. The lady's cat sits on the roof everyday.
7. Is that the teacher's house.
8. What's that ? It is a bird's egg.
9. Is this the farmer's farm ?
10. Where is the king's palace ?

Note 3. Meanings Signified : ^{๒๕}จงตั้งเกดคุณความหมาย
ของ Possessive Nouns คือไปน :-

1. ^{๒๕}เป็นเจ้าของแต่ผู้เดียว

e.g. It is **Tom's** pen.

(It is the pen **of Tom.**)

2. เป็นเจ้าของร่วมกัน

e.g. That is the King and *Queen's* palace.

(The palace belongs to both of them.)

3. เป็นเจ้าของแยกจากกัน

e.g. The *boy's* and the *girl's* houses are there.

(They have different houses.)

4. ละ Nouns ที่ถูกเป็นเจ้าของไว้ในฐานที่เข้าใจ

e.g. [He is going to his *friend's* (house).

I am going to the *dentist's* (office).

LESSON 4

Nouns and Articles

Note 1. ในภาษาอังกฤษมีคำอยู่จำพวกหนึ่ง ซึ่งมีหน้าที่นำหน้า **Nouns** เพื่อกำหนดหรือบ่ง **Nouns** ที่ตามมาหลังโดยเฉพาะ คำเหล่านี้เรียกว่า **Determinatives**

- e.g. 1. **One** man has **two** arms.
2. Do you know **any** person here ?
3. **A** cat catches **a** rat.
4. **An** ass does not look like **an** ox.
5. **The** sun is in **the** sky.

จากตัวอย่างข้างบนจะเห็นว่า a, an และ the ก็จัดอยู่ในจำพวก **Determinatives** เหมือนกัน และมันมีคุณสมบัติเป็นพิเศษ เห็นอกว่า **Determinatives** อื่น ๆ มีชื่อโดยเฉพาะเรียกว่า **Articles**.

Note 2. มี **Articles** อยู่สองชนิด :—

(1) “A” หรือ “An” เรียกว่า **Indefinite Article** มี
ความหมายคล้ายกันกับ “one” หรือ “any”

“a” ใช้นำหน้าคำที่เริ่มต้นด้วยเสียง พยัญชนะ

“an” ใช้นำหน้าคำที่เริ่มต้นด้วยเสียง สระ

- e.g. 1. **A** house has **a** roof.
 2. **A** university is **a** useful institute.
 3. **An** imp has **an** evil spirit.
 4. **An** hour is **an** honest moment.

(2) “The” เรียกว่า **Definite Article** มีความหมาย.
 และหน้าที่คล้ายคลึงกันกับ Determinatives: “This”,
 “That”, “These”, และ “Those”.

- e.g. 1. Please bring me **the** (= those) books.
 2. Who is **the** (= that) man ?
 3. I don't like **the** (= these) apples.
 4. Will you take **the** (= this) one ?

Exercises

A. Put “**a**” or “**an**” in place of “**one**”, and also notice the slight change in meaning:—

- e.g. 1. **One** man cannot serve two masters.
A man cannot serve two masters.
 2. In **one** country there is **one** capital.
 In **a** country there is **a** capital.
1. One hour has sixty minutes.
 2. I wish I could have one book on chemistry.
 3. There was only one man in the office.
 4. Only one boy is enough to do the work.
 5. He wanted to borrow one pencil from me.

6. I found one small tiger in the cave.
7. He has paid for one pair of shoes he ordered.
8. One farmer should have one acre of land.
9. I ate only one mango and one orange.
10. The teacher is one old friend of mine.

B. Put "*the*" in place of "*this*", "*that*", "*these*", and "*those*"; and also notice the slight change in meaning:-

e.g. 1. *Those* children could swim across *this* river.

The children could swim across *the* river.

2. *That* red house belongs to *these* people.

The red house belongs to *the* people.

1. These apples are very good to eat.
2. That pen on that table is not mine.
3. Who does that magazine belong to ?
4. Those men look very unhappy.
5. This house is too small for your family.
6. Will you please mail these letters for me ?
7. Those pictures on that wall are quite beautiful.
8. These flowers in this vase are very lovely.
9. That stranger came out of that house.
10. This school-keeper rang that bell before time.
11. That chauffeur drove this car very carelessly.
12. I saw her plucking those flowers alone.

C. Choose the correct **article** :-

e.g. There are one hundred cents in (a the) dollar.

There are one hundred cents in **a** dollar.

1. He is (a the) good man of (the a) two.
2. He is (a an) old friend of mine.
3. Dr. Robinson is (a an) very honourable man.
4. (A The) red book on (a the) table belongs to him.
5. Yesterday (a the) same beggar came here again.
6. Mary is not (a the) French but she is (a an) Australian.
7. (A The) rose in (a the) vase is faded.
8. (A The) coward dies many times before his death.
9. (A The) dead lion is better than (a the) living cow.
10. (An The) enemy is as dangerous as (the an) angry friend.

LESSON 5

Uses of Article "The"

Note 1. ตามธรรมดาเราไม่ใช้ "The" นำหน้า Proper Nouns
แต่ Proper Nouns ต่อไปนี้ต้องมี "The" นำหน้า

(a) Proper Nouns ที่เป็นชื่อของ แม่น้ำ, ทะเล,
มหาสมุทร, ภูเขา, หมู่เกาะ, ทิวเขา

- e.g. 1. *The* Nile is longer than *the* Mississippi.
2. Ceylon is an island in *the* Indian Ocean.
3. Rubber was first known in *the* West Indies.
4. *The* Himalayas lies on *the* North of India.

(b) Proper Nouns ที่เป็นชื่อของเรือ

- e.g. 1. *The* Queen Mary is the largest in the world.
2. *The* Prince of Wales was sunk by the Japanese.

(c) **Proper Nouns** ที่เป็นชื่อบรรยาย (Descriptive Nouns)

- e.g. 1. **The** United States of America is the richest country in the world.
2. I used to pay a visit to the University College of Ceylon.
3. **The** Dominion of Canada is included in **the** United Kingdom.

Exercises

Put "**the**" where necessary :-

- e.g. 1. Amazon is a long river.

The Amazon is a long river.

2. Chowphya River runs into Gulf of Thailand.

The Chowphya River runs into **the** Gulf of Thailand.

3. Mont Blanc is the highest mountain in Alps.

Mont Blanc is the highest mountain in **the** Alps.

1. I travelled from Thailand to Japan during the war.

2. He sailed from Bangkok in Kota Baru, a ship that was later sunk by British Fleet.
3. The ship crossed China Sea to Luzon in Philippines.
4. What is the highest mountain in Rockies ?
5. I used to sail across Atlantic to New York in United States.
6. I am sure that Red Sea Hills and Imatongs are the names of mountain ranges.
7. The steamer called at Cape Town in Union of South Africa.
8. Do you know where Ping, Yom, Wang, and Nan meet ?
9. Hindustan Rivers flow into Bay of Bengal.
10. Having rounded Cape Horn she went up South Atlantic Ocean to Africa.

Note 2. เราคงใช้ "The" นำหน้า Nouns ซึ่งเป็นที่เข้าใจกันอยู่แล้วระหว่างคุณทนา หรือระหว่างผู้เขียนและผู้อ่าน ว่าหมายถึงใครหรืออะไร

e.g. 1. Shut **the** window, please.

2. Can you see **the** letters on **the** black-board ?

3. **The** headmaster is coming.

Exercises

Insert "**the**" where necessary :-

e.g. Please bring me book on table.

Please bring me **the** book on **the** table.

1. What is name of lady ?
2. Stranger went into house again.
3. What is time by your watch ?
4. We must finish exercises before bell rings.
5. Look at dog biting cat !
6. I still remember shop where I bought pen.
7. Who is man standing at gate ?
8. This is answer to question teacher gave us.
9. After saying words he left room.
10. Boy and girl are brother and sister.

Note 3. ต้องใช้ "**The**" หน้า Nouns ที่เข้าใจว่ามี
 อยู่แต่เพียงสิ่งเดียว และ Nouns ที่มี Superlative
 Adjectives มาขยาย

- e.g. 1. **The** moon goes round **the** earth.
 2. Australia is **the** largest island in **the** world
 3. She is **the** most beautiful of all.

Exercises

Insert "**The**" where necessary :-

e.g. Sun is largest of all stars.

The sun is **the** largest of all **the** stars.

1. January is first month of year.
2. We slept on ground under sky.
3. Honesty is best policy.
4. Which is shortest way to station ?
5. What is highest mountain in world ?
6. Supper is last meal of day.
7. Only man I saw was an Arab.
8. In day we have light from sun.
9. In night we enjoy light of moon.
10. How far is it from here to nearest post-office ?
11. He chose most expensive book from shop.
12. London is largest city in West.
13. I am looking for cheapest house to let.
14. Solomon was wisest king and richest man in those days.
15. Hunger is best sauce.

Note 4. เราใช้ "**The**" นำหน้า Nouns ที่กล่าวมาแล้ว
 ครั้งหนึ่งตามเนื้อเรื่องที่เราได้ฟัง หรือเรื่องนิยาย

e.g. A man went into a shop. In **the** shop
 there was a woman. **The** woman asked

the man what she could do for him. *The* man said nothing but looked at *the* woman's face and then left *the* shop.

Exercises

Insert "*The*" where necessary :—

1. Once there was a man who lived in a little hut on a hill. Man got his water from stream on hill. Water was cool and sweet. One day he went to top of hill. There he saw elephant at bottom of hill standing under tree. On tree there was a little bird looking at it.
2. Once there was a lady who lost her way in a forest. She slept on ground under trees. In day she looked at sun and in night she looked at moon but could not find her way home. First man woman met was a hunter. She asked him who he was. "Can't you remember me?" said the man with a smile. "I am your husband".

Note 5. เราใช้ Adjectives แทน Nouns ได้ในความ
 หมายเป็นพหูพจน์ โดยการเติม "The" ลงหน้า
 Adjectives นั้น

- e.g. 1. **The** rich should help *the* poor.
 2. **The** young must respect *the* old.
 3. **The** English and *the* French are great friends.

Exercises

Insert "The" where necessary :-

e.g. Good go to heaven but wicked are ended in hell.

The good go to heaven but *the* wicked are ended in hell.

1. Good and evil are to be found in all parts of world.
2. Strong should not bully weak.
3. Wise become wiser by experience.
4. Foolish never learn to be less foolish.
5. Sinful will be punished for their sin.
6. Idle often waste a lot of time.
7. Only brave can win fair ladies.
8. It is no use to take revenge against dead.
9. Careless are seldom rewarded for their work.
10. Selfish are very fond of generous.
11. Careful usually avoid clever.
12. Helpless can very little gain from heartless.
13. Evil that men do live after them.
14. Good are often interned with their bones.
15. Kindness can hardly be sought from cruel.

LESSON 6

Uses of Articles (Cont.)

"A" or "An"

Note 1. ต้องเติม "a" หรือ "an" ลงหน้า **Countable Nouns** ที่เป็นเอกพจน์ เมื่อเรากล่าวถึง Nouns นั้น ในความหมายทั่วไป ไม่ได้มุ่งเฉพาะว่าเป็นคนไหน หรือของสิ่งใด และ Nouns นั้นไม่มี Determinatives อื่น ๆ (เช่น my, that, no, one, etc.) นำหน้า

- e.g. 1. **A** husband is **a** man.
2. **A** tiger lives in **a** forest.
3. **A** singing bird can sing **a** song.

Note 2. เราสามารถกล่าวถึง **Countable Nouns** ให้มีความหมายทั่ว ๆ ไปได้อีกวิธีหนึ่ง โดยการเปลี่ยน Nouns นั้น ให้เป็นพหูพจน์ และตัด "a" หรือ "an" ออก

- e.g. 1. **Husbands** are **men**.
2. **Tigers** live in **forests**.
3. Singing **birds** can sing **songs**.

Exercises

A. Supply "a" or "an" where necessary :-

Note : ไม่ใช่ "a" หรือ "an" นำหน้า **Uncountable Nouns**

e.g. We get wood from tree.

We get wood from **a** tree.

1. bottle is made of glass.
2. rice grows in field on farm.
3. We drink coffee from cup.
4. silver coin is made of silver.
5. lamp like candle gives light.
6. We light fire with paper and sticks.
7. Where there is smoke there is fire.
8. winter suit is made of thick cloth.
9. tin comes from tin mine.
10. car is made of steel and rubber.
11. pencil is used for drawing picture.
12. hen can lay only egg at a time.
13. There are twenty-four hours in day.
14. oil and water do not mix.
15. Where there is will there is way.

B. Change the following sentences into **plural** :-

e.g. **An orange** is **a fruit**.

Oranges are **fruits**.

Note : **Uncountable Nouns** เปลี่ยนเป็นพหูพจน์ไม่ได้

1. A gardener digs a garden with a spade and fork.
2. A donkey is believed to be a very stupid animal.
3. A duck is a wonderful kind of bird.
4. A crow can eat everything even a dead fish.
5. A window is usually made of wood and glass.
6. A lion is supposed to be the king of a forest.
7. In a classroom there are a table and a chair.
8. A cigarette has a light on one end and a fool on the other.
9. A pound can buy more than a shilling.
10. A letter can be written in ink or with a pencil.
11. A mule looks like a donkey.
12. A book is a book though there is nothing in it.

C. *Change the following sentences into singular :-*

e.g. 1. **Horses are** good **friends** to man.

A horse is a good **friend** to man.

2. There **are** always **fish** in the pond.

There **is** always **a fish** in the pond.

1. Flowers are usually seen in spring.
2. Banknotes are promises of money.
3. We turn locks with keys.
4. Dogs are faithful animals.
5. Elephants are found in India and Thailand.
6. Children generally love sweets.

7. Plants naturally need sunshine and rain.
8. Dark clouds often have silver lines.
9. Watches can keep just as good time as clocks.
10. Trees have new leaves in spring.
11. Games as well as studies are very necessary to children.
12. Hens usually lay eggs everyday.
13. Kind words generally come from good hearts.
14. Creatures are believed to be made by God.
15. We cannot judge men's character by their appearances.

Note 3. ต้องมี “a” หรือ “an” นำหน้า ถ้าเราจะใช้

Nouns ในความหมายต่อไปนี้:—

I. “a” แปลว่า “หนึ่ง” หรือ “คนหนึ่งคนใด
สิ่งหนึ่งสิ่งใด” ที่ยังไม่ทราบแน่นอน

- e.g. 1. There is **a** lady in the room.
2. She has **a** sister and **a** brother.
3. **A** stranger went into the house.
4. **A** man came to see you.

(a) เมื่อเปลี่ยน **Nouns** ในความหมายเช่นนี้ให้
เป็น plural ต้องใช้ “some” แทน “a” หรือ
“an” เพื่อบอกจำนวนแต่ไม่แน่นอน ใน
ประโยคบอกเล่า

- e.g. 1. There is **a** flower in the garden.
 There are **some** flowers in the garden.
 2. She has **a** book on chemistry.
 She has **some** books on chemistry.

(b) ถ้าเราต้องการจะบอกปริมาณ (Quantity) ของ **Uncountable Nouns** เราใช้ “some” นำหน้า Nouns นั้นได้เหมือนกัน ซึ่งตรงกับภาษาไทยว่า “บ้างพอสมควร” ในประโยคบอกเล่า (Affirmative)

- e.g. 1. Give him **some** food to eat.
 2. He has **some** hope for the exam.
 3. Please add **some** salt to the soup.

(c) และเปลี่ยน “some” เป็น “any” ในประโยคคำถาม (Questions) หรือปฏิเสธ (Negatives) ซึ่งแปลว่า “มีบ้างไหม?” หรือ “ไม่มีเลย”

- e.g. 1. Is there **any** house to let here ?
 2. Have you **any** thing to say ?
 3. I didn't see **any** one there.

Exercises

A. Supply “a”, “an”, “some” or “any” where necessary :

- e.g. 1. fire and water are good servants but very bad masters.
 Fire and water are good servants but very bad masters.

2. I want.....cup of.....coffee with.....cream in it.

I want **a** cup of coffee with **some** cream in it.

3. She asked me forsugar, but I can't find.....

She asked me for **some** sugar, but I can't find **any**.

1. Please give him.....food and.....glass of.....water.
2. Did she see.....thing on the floor?
3. I have.....egg.....toast and.....butter for breakfast.
4. Would you like.....tea? No, thanks.
5. Are there.....beautiful roses in your garden?
6. In the room there is.....writing table with.....books and.....ink pot on it.
7.fruits are very good for the health.
8. There is only.....bread, but there isn't.....butter.
9.cars make.....loud noises.
10. I can't eat.....more meat, but I should like.....more fish.
11. Does she want.....more like that?
12. She told me to buy.....cakes for her when I returned.

13. new car is more expensive than old one.
14. children prefer sweets to cakes.
15. He wants more food. Do you have more left ?
16. He saw only girl and old man, but he didn't see soldiers there.
17. I have thing to tell you, but be sure that you mustn't let one know about it.
18. That is old house, not new one ; however persons don't need one better.

B. *Put into plural :-*

e.g. The girl took **a** needle from the box.

The girls took **some** needles from the box.

1. There is a crocodile in the river.
2. I put a coin into the machine.
3. There is a picture in the book.
4. He bought a tie from the shop.
5. The teacher has a text on electricity.
6. A squirrel has eaten the apple.
7. The gentleman has a house to let.
8. His father gave him a fine shirt.
9. He asked me a question.
10. The dog chased a sheep along the road.

II. “a” แปลว่า “ตัวอย่างของ.....”

- e.g. 1. This is **a** pen.
 (= This is an example of a pen).
 2. That is **a** toy.
 3. She lived in **a** small house.

(a) อย่าเติม **Article** ใด ๆ ลงหน้า **Nouns** ตามความหมายที่กล่าวมาแล้ว เมื่อเปลี่ยนเป็นพหูพจน์

- e.g. 1. These are **pens**.
 2. Those are **toys**.
 3. They lived in small **houses**.

(b) อย่าเติม “a” หรือ “an” ลงหน้า **Uncountable Nouns**

- e.g. 1. The table is made of **wood**.
 2. We drink **water** every-day.
 3. **Iron** is a useful metal.

III. “a” แปลว่า “ทุกคน” หรือ “ทุก ๆ สิ่ง”

- e.g. 1. **A** lion is **a** wild animal.
 2. **A** cow gives us milk.
 3. **A** building is **a** house.

อย่าเติม **Article** ใด ๆ ลงหน้า **Nouns** ตามความหมายที่กล่าวมาแล้ว เมื่อเปลี่ยนเป็นพหูพจน์

- e.g. 1. **Lions** are wild **animals**.
 2. **Cows** give us milk.
 3. **Buildings** are **houses**.

Exercises

A. Put into plural :—

e.g. **A pen is** filled with ink.

Pens are filled with ink.

1. An easy exercise is good for a beginner.
2. A bedroom usually has a bed.
3. An apple is a very good fruit.
4. A book is made of paper.
5. Grass grows in a field.
6. A dog likes a piece of bone.
7. An Englishman drinks tea before breakfast.
8. A new broom sweeps clean.
9. A flower naturally has a sweet smell.
10. This is a bird caught from a forest.

B. Supply "a" or "an" where necessary, and make sure that you understand its meaning:—

e.g. educated person does not write
 letter in red ink.

An educated person does not write **a** letter
 in red ink.

1. European lives on bread.
2. bee lives in hive.
3. volcano may spurt out lava any time.
4. cape is headland jutting out into the sea.
5. sample of the tie has been sent to customer.
6. electricity can be produced by dynamo.
7. error is mistake or thing done wrong.
8. In kitchen there is stove for cooking.
9. eye is like camera.
10. tray is made of wood or metal for carrying light things.
11. oasis is rich spot in desert.
12. perfect life is made up of health, wealth, and wisdom.
13. ruler is used for ruling lines.
14. no rose is without thorn.
15. dictionary is book that explains the words of language.

Note 4. ในการเปล่งอุทาน เพื่อบรรยายความหมายว่า
 “.....อะไรเชแนฟ!” เราใช้:—

(a) "What....." น้ำหนัก Plural นก Uncountable Nouns และ

(b) "What a...." น้ำหนัก Singular Countable Nouns

- e.g. 1. **What** friendly people they are !
 2. **What** tasty coffee it is !
 3. **What** a pretty girl she is !

Complete the following sentences :-

- e.g. 1. hard work he does !
What hard work he does !
 2. nice daughter he has !
What a nice daughter he has !
1. funny dress she's wearing !
 2. fine day it is !
 3. lovely eyes she has !
 4. dark hair he has !
 5. nonsense you speak !
 6. silly mistake he made !
 7. hard time it was !
 8. senseless words he is using !
 9. charming manners she has !
 10. hopeless film it was !

Note 5. ในการบรรยายความรู้ดังกล่าว “มีบางแต่เพียง”
เราใช้

(a) “A few” = some แปลว่า “ต้งดง” นำ
หน้า Plural Countable Nouns

e.g. 1. I have **a few** friends here.
Only **a few** boys can do the sum.

(b) “A little” = some แปลว่า “เล็กน้อย” นำ
หน้า Uncountable Nouns

e.g. 1. I have **a little** money in the bank.
2. She can do only **a little** work.

Exercises

Complete the following sentences:—

e.g. 1. In winter only.....birds are seen on
the tree.

In winter only **a few** birds are seen on
the tree.

2. There is still.....hope for peace.

There is still **a little** hope for peace.

1. The bus was nearly full; there is.....room left.
2.boys in this class can answer the question.
4.knowledge of the world is better than none.

5. I had letters from my friends this morning.
6. He is getting better now ; he can eat food.
7. It has been raining hard ; only students can come.
9. Tonight the sky is very cloudy ; only stars are seen.
10. advantage is a great superiority.

Note 6. **วลี (Phrases)** เป็นจำนวนมากที่ประกอบด้วยคำต่าง ๆ จับกันเป็นกลุ่มตายตัว เนื่องจากการใช้กันจนเป็นแบบฉบับ และมีความหมายโดยเฉพาะ นักเรียนควรจดจำทั้งวลีจึงจะได้ประโยชน์ เพราะ **Nouns** ในบางวลี ไม่ต้องมี **Article** ใด ๆ มาหน้า

- e.g. 1. He went to Chiang Mai **by train**.
 2. Will you be **at home** tomorrow ?
 3. He is doing well **at school**.
 4. I always come **to school on time**.

Exercises

Answer the following sentences, using the phrases given in brackets.

- e.g. How did you come to Bangkok ? (by air).
 I came to Bangkok **by air**.

1. When did he return ? (at dinner-time)
2. When are stars seen ? (at night).
3. Where do we usually pray ? (at church).
4. When does the sun shine ? (by day).
5. Are you sure of your success ? (in doubt).
6. Why is she so sad ? (in love).
7. Where did she go ? (to market).
8. When did you get up ? (at dawn).
9. What is he doing now ? (at leisure).
10. When are you free ? (at noon).
11. When shall I come here ? (before time).
12. Did he come to school late ? (in time).
13. How did you get the book ? (by chance).
14. What does a wanderer do ? (from place
to place).
15. Why was the man arrested ? (set fire to).
16. How do you go to work ? (by bus).
17. When are flowers in bloom ? (in spring).
18. How did he go to hospital ? (on foot).
19. How was the world at the time ? (at peace).
20. Where was the murderer sent ? (to prison).
21. What do you bring the book for ? (for sale).
22. How did Good Year discover rubber ?
(by trial and error).
23. When does the tiger hunt its prey ?
(by night).

24. At what time do you go to school ?
(at seven o'clock).
25. When are you going to leave school ?
(next year).
26. Where will you go when you are sleepy ?
(to bed).
27. What did you do when you met him ?
(to shake hands).
28. Will you come back again ? (set foot on).
29. What will happen to me if I sleep in the open ?
(to catch cold).
30. What do you say when you meet someone in
the morning ? (to say good morning).

Mixed Exercises

A. Supply "**a**", "**an**", "**some**", or "**the**" where necessary :-

1. There are bushes in garden.
2. He has pen and pen.
3. Can you drive car to school ?
4. car in garage has new tyres.
5. There is cat on roof of house
6. black dog is drinking water from
..... basin.
7. girl in room sings song very
beautifully.

8. He gave me shirt and pair of trousers.
9. good boy does not say bad words.
10. There is gate at back fence.
11. He likes cigarette and coffee after breakfast.
12. She likes bread and butter and piece of cake for tea.
13. Please, bring me matches on mantle-piece.
14. Thai people live on rice and fish.
15. man with red hair is good boxer.
16. There is broken vase on table.
17. I wanted to buy oranges and mango.
18. beggar is in need of food and clothing.
19. last page of book is torn.
20. honesty is best policy.

B. Supply "a", "an", "the", or "some" where necessary :-

1. There was snake in hole.
2. man is waiting for you in hall.
3. car at the door belongs to girl.
4. woman in white has very pretty daughter.
5. He sold furniture to buy food.

6. ping-pong is active game.
7. Put vegetables in soup.
8. There are oranges on tree near house.
9. new broom sweeps clean, but old one knows all corners.
10. I would travel to London by steamer.
11. We are looking for taxi to return to hotel.
12. They spent last holidays in country.
13. tiger lives on flesh of other animals.
14. child should drink glass of milk before going to bed.
15. I prefer tea to coffee.
16. She had high nose, big eyes, and, dark hair.

LESSON 7

Personal Pronouns

Note 1. **Personal Pronouns** มีรูปไม่เหมือนกัน ต่างบุรุษก็มีรูปต่างกัน และเมื่อเป็น **Subjects** มีรูปอย่างหนึ่ง แต่พอเป็น **Objects** ก็กับมีรูปไปเสียอีกอย่างหนึ่ง นักเรียนควรจดจำรูป **Pronouns** เหล่านี้ ตลอดจนการใช้ให้ได้

	Subjects	Objects	Meanings.
Singular	<i>I</i>	<i>me</i>	ฉัน
	<i>You</i>	<i>you</i>	ท่าน
	<i>He</i>	<i>him</i>	เขาชาย
	<i>She</i>	<i>her</i>	เขาหญิง
	<i>It</i>	<i>it</i>	มัน
Plural	<i>We</i>	<i>us</i>	เรา
	<i>You</i>	<i>you</i>	ท่านทั้งหลาย
	<i>They</i>	<i>them</i>	เขาทั้งหลาย

Note 2. **Personal Pronouns** มีหลักการใช้ต่อไปนี้ :—

(a) **I** : ใช้แทนผู้พูด (บุรุษที่ 1) ได้ทั้งชายและหญิง
เอกพจน์

- We : ใช้แทนบุรุษที่ 1 ได้ทั้งหญิงและชายพหูพจน์
- (b) You : ใช้แทนผู้ที่ถูกพูดถึงด้วย (บุรุษที่ 2) ได้ทั้งหญิงและชาย ทั้งเอกพจน์และพหูพจน์
- (c) He : ใช้แทนผู้ที่ถูกพูดถึง (บุรุษที่ 3) ได้เฉพาะเพศชาย เอกพจน์
- (d) She : ใช้แทนผู้ที่ถูกพูดถึง (บุรุษที่ 3) ได้เฉพาะเพศหญิง เอกพจน์
- (e) It : ใช้แทนสัตว์ และสิ่งของ เด็กอ่อน เอกพจน์ บุรุษที่ 3
- (f) They : ใช้แทนได้ทั้งบุคคล สัตว์ และสิ่งของ พหูพจน์ บุรุษที่ 3

Exercises

A. Choose the correct **Pronoun** :-

Note : **Personal Pronouns** ที่มาตามหลัง **Transitive Verbs**
และ **Prepositions** ต้องมีรูปเป็น กรรม (Objects)

- e.g. 1. What is the matter with (he him) ?
What is the matter with him ?
2. Let (we, us) go now, shall we ?
Let **us** go now, shall we ?

1. (They Them) want to talk to (she her).
2. (He Him) told (they them) all about (I me).
3. (She her) is very fond of you and (I me).
4. (He Him) likes to talk with (we us) in English.
5. Will you please explain this sum to both of (me us) ?
6. I am taller than (he him) is.
7. You are taller than any of (they them).
8. My mother won't allow my sister and (I me) to go out.
9. The man often asks (we us) to go with (he him) to pictures.
10. It is (he him) that (we she) are looking for.

B. *Answer the following questions using **personal pronouns** in your answers :-*

e.g. When do famers begin their farming ?
They begin it in June.

1. When does your school begin ?
2. Where did the girl pluck the flowers ?
3. Are the dog and the cat fighting ?
4. Why are the people running ?
5. Have you written letters to your brother and sister ?
6. Did you sit near James and Jim ?
7. Has the servant washed the clothes ?

8. Didn't the people listen to the speaker ?
9. Has the company opened a new shop ?
10. Is the lady leaving her family ?
11. Does your friend come by train ?
12. Has the carpenter finished the table ?
13. Does the man over there speak French ?
14. Is the kind of food very good for the body ?
15. Did Harry and Jane meet your sister ?

C. Put a **personal pronoun** in place of each noun or nouns in bold type :-

e.g. **The teacher** left **the letters** in **the drawer**.
He left **them** in **it**.

1. **Rarai** is going to the party with **Somjai**.
2. Did you hear **the news** about **Harry**.
3. **The man** loves **his children** very much.
4. **The students** are very fond of **the headmaster**.
5. **Jane and I** are good friends.
6. **Vichai and Rarai** planned to go to Chiang Mai.
7. **Vilai and Somchai** met **an old man** on the way home.
8. **The priest** stood looking at **the leaves** falling in summer.
9. **The teacher** is explaining **the lesson** to the students.
10. **The lady** was talking with **the men** about **the trip**.

D. *Make the following sentences plural :-*

Note : Subjs. { Singular : I, you, he, she, it.
 { Plural : We, you, they.

Objs. { Singular : me, you, him, her, it.
 { Plural : us, you, them.

e.g. *I* have seen **him** twice.

We have seen **them** twice.

1. He has told you about it.
2. I am making a new suit for him.
3. Are you building a new house for her ?
4. She is not talking to you.
5. I am going to remove to a new place.
6. How does she like the dress ?
7. When does he begin with the work ?
8. It belongs to him.
9. I caught her by the arm.
10. Can you give me the lily ?

Note 3. “It” นี้การใช้ดังต่อไปนี้ :-

(a) ใช้หมายถึง เวลา, ระยะทาง, ดินฟ้าอากาศ ฯลฯ

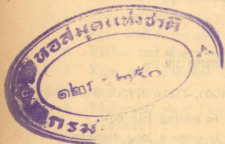
- e.g. 1. **It** is getting late now.
2. **It** is quite a long distance.
3. **It** is colder now than yesterday.
4. **It** rained very heavily yesterday.

(b) เป็นตัวนำของประโยคแทน Infinitives หรือ Infinitive phrases ซึ่งเป็น Subjects มาตามหลัง

- e.g. 1. *It is very warm to walk in the sun.*
 2. *It is a sin to tell a lie.*
 3. *It is harmful to drink too much.*

(c) เป็นตัวนำ(Introductory) ของประโยคหลักและแทนประโยค (Clauses) ซึ่งเป็น Subjects มาตามหลัง

- e.g. 1. *It is true that I love you.*
 2. *It is certain that he will return soon.*
 3. *It is believed that he died in the battle-field.*





LESSON 8

Reflexive and Emphatic Pronouns

Note 1. "Self-" Pronouns มีรูปมาจาก Personal Pronouns โดยการเติม "-self" เมื่อเป็นเอกพจน์ และ "-selves" เมื่อเป็นพหูพจน์ มีชื่อตามหน้าที่ดังต่อไปนี้:—

(a) Reflexive Pronouns : "Reflexive" แปลว่า "สะท้อน" ฉะนั้น Reflexive Pronouns จึงใช้แทน Nouns หรือ Pronouns ในความหมายที่การกระทำสะท้อนเข้าสู่วัตถุของผู้กระทำเอง และทำหน้าที่เป็น Objects เสมอ

- e.g. 1. The *woman* hanged *herself*.
2. *You* must help *yourselves*.
3. The mad *dog* bit *itself*.

(b) Emphatic Pronouns : "Emphatic" แปลว่า "เกี่ยวกับการเน้น" ฉะนั้น Emphatic Pronouns จึงใช้แทน Nouns หรือ Pronouns เพื่อเน้น Nouns หรือ Pronouns ที่มาข้างหน้า

- e.g. 1. I saw the **King himself**.
 2. The **boy himself** broke the glass.
 2. **We** built the house **ourselves**.

Note 2. จงสังเกตรูปของ "Self" pronouns ทั้งเอกพจน์
 และพหูพจน์ เพื่อสะดวกแก่การเปลี่ยนพจน์

Personal		Self-Forms.	
Singular	Plural	Singular	Plural.
I	We	myself	ourselves.
You	You	yourself	yourselves.
He	They	himself	themselves
She		herself	
It		itself	

Exercises

A. Answer the following questions, using "self" pronouns :-

- e.g. 1. How does the earth turn ?
 It turns round **itself**.
 2. Who saw the King ?
 They **themselves** saw the King.

- Who will do the work ?
- Who has he done it to please ?
- Who did all the work ?
- Whom did she hurt ?

5. Whom did the lady kill ?
6. Who will help you ?
7. Who cooked your food ?
8. Whom will you punish ?
9. Whom will she make the dress for ?
10. Who told you about it ?

B. Change the **singular words** into **plural words** wherever possible :-

e.g. He **himself** shot that tiger.

They **themselves** shot those tigers.

1. She herself made the dress.
2. The cat itself broke the flower-pot.
3. He himself has done the work.
4. I can do the thing myself.
5. You can enjoy yourself dancing.
6. He has made himself very famous.
7. She fell down and hurt herself.
8. I went to bed after washing myself.
9. You can teach yourself to be patient.
10. You must take proper care of yourself.

C. Complete the following sentences, using "**self**" **pronouns** :-

e.g. I cannot force.....to commit any sin.

I cannot force **myself** to commit any sin.

1. You can helpto more cake.
2. Why did the girl hit ?
3. Did you enjoy seeing the movies ?
4. He has depended onsince he was a child.
5. It is nice to behave properly in the public.
6. We knowbetter than any one does.
7. Why don't you makemore active ?
8. If you do not help, no one can help you.
9. We must fight for, or we cannot live.
10. It is also a sin to kill.....

D. Rewrite the following sentences, using the word "**alone**" in place of "**by - self**" :-

Note : "by- self" means "alone".

e.g. She is living **by herself** in the castle.

She is living **alone** in the castle.

1. Have you got to do it **by yourself** ?
2. He doesn't like to go out **by himself**.
3. How can a girl go out **by herself** at night ?
4. The poor child always plays **by itself**.
5. I don't think you can get on **by yourself**.

6. The soldiers could not fight **by themselves** without a captain.
7. How can a man live **by himself** in the world?
8. When I am **by myself** I feel lonely.
9. She can stay **by herself**; nobody will trouble her.
10. We shouldn't spend too much time **by ourselves**.

LESSON 9

Possessive

Pronouns and Adjectives

Note 1. "Possessive" แปลว่า "เกี่ยวกับการเป็นเจ้าของ" ฉะนั้น

(a) Possessive Pronouns จึงเป็นชื่อของ Pronouns
ที่ใช้แทน Nouns และแสดงการเป็นเจ้าของด้วย

- e.g. 1. The pen is *his*, not *mine*.
2. The house is *hers*.

(b) Possessive Adjectives ก็เป็นชื่อของ Adjectives
ที่กำหนดขยาย Nouns และแสดงการเป็นเจ้าของด้วย

- e.g. 1. *Your* pen is here.
2. It is *my* house.

Note 2. Forms of Possessive Pronouns and Adjectives :

รูปต่างๆ ของ Possessive Pronouns and Adjectives
ซึ่งมีตัวต้นพจน์กับ Personal Pronouns มีดังต่อไปนี้

Singular	{	Person. Prons.	I	you	he	she	it
	{	Poss. Prons..	mine	yours	his	hers	its
	{	Poss. Adjs.	my	your	his	her	its
Plural	{	Person. Prons.	we	you	they		
	{	Poss. Prons.	ours	yours	theirs		
	{	Poss. Adjs.	our	your	their.		

Note : Poss. Adjs. มี Nouns มาตามหลัง แต่

Poss. Pron. ไม่มี Nouns มาตาม

Exercises

A. Choose the correct form:-

e.g. Is that (your yours) rubber? This is (my mine).

Is that **your** rubber? This is **mine**.

1. He has lost (him his) hope for the exam.
2. She borrowed money from all (her hers) neighbours.
3. I told (she her) to bring (her hers) brother along.
4. Whose glass is that, (my mine) or (your yours)?
5. You can do (your yours) work and I shall do (my mine).
6. I cannot find (my mine) ruler. Can you lend me (your yours)?
7. Where is (their theirs) class? Is that (her hers)?
8. We found (our ours) seats, but they were looking for (their theirs).
9. They have already taken (their theirs) meal. Have you taken (your yours)?
10. I am always in time for (my mine) school, but why are you often late for (your yours)?

B. Put a **possessive pronouns** in place of the word or words in bold type.

e.g. The shoes are not **my shoes**.

The shoes are not **mine**.

1. The bags are not **their bags**.
2. The paintings are **our paintings**.
3. The spectacles are **her spectacles**, not **his spectacles**.
4. That belt is not **your belt**; it is **my belt**.
5. This ring is **her ring**; **my ring** is bigger.
6. The green ruler is not **your ruler**; it is **the teacher's**.
7. The blue coat is the master's; it looks like **your coat**.
8. His camera has been lost; but **my camera** is still with me.
9. My cufflink has been found; but **his cufflink** is still lost.
10. His tie is very old, but **your tie** is still quite new.

C. Rewrite the following sentences, using **possessive pronouns**:-

Note : **belong to** = be + poss. pron. = **belongs to**

e.g. The watch **does** not **belong to me**.

The watch **is** not **mine**.

1. The house and the land belong to her.
2. The comb used by the lady does not belong to her.
3. The brush with a red handle belongs to **you**.
4. The package of cigarette belongs to him.
5. The notebooks on the table belong to them.
6. These umbrellas belong to us.
7. That bicycle belongs to him; it does not belong to me.
8. The seats belong to them.
9. Does the handbag belong to you?
10. Do the bangles belong to her or them?

D. *Make the following sentences plural :-*

e.g. The car is **mine**.

The cars are **ours**.

1. The hat is hers.
2. Is the walking stick yours?
3. Is the overcoat yours? It is his.
4. The rose is mine; I left it on the desk.
5. The cigarette-case is his, not mine.
6. The notebook is not yours; yours is green.
7. He did his work and I did mine.
8. The seat is hers; don't sit on it.
9. Is the goose yours? No, it is hers.
10. The picture is hers; I draw it for her.
11. Mother is mine and my love is hers.
12. May success be yours.

E. *Make the following sentences plural :-*

e.g. He is **my** friends.

They are **our** friends.

1. She is sewing her dress.
2. I shall finish my exercise before ten o'clock.
3. He had done his duty before death.
4. It is my wish to be good to all.
5. She has found her pen on the bus.
6. Tell him not to forget to bring his neice along
7. Do you remember your promise ?
8. I have my ticket for the show. Do you have yours ?
9. He has already had his dinner.
10. It will be a lovely dog with soft fur and a bushy tail.

LESSON 10

Demonstrative Pronouns and Adjectives

Note 1. "Demonstrative" แปลว่า "ชี้เฉพาะ" ฉะนั้น

(a) **Demonstrative Pronouns.** ชี้ใช้เป็นชื่อของ
Pronouns ที่บ่งเฉพาะว่าแทน Nouns ตัวไหน

- e.g. 1. What is *that* ?
2. *This* is a watch.
3. The *other* is better.

(b) **Demonstrative Adjectives.** ใช้เป็นชื่อของ
Adjectives ที่ขยาย Nouns เพื่อชี้เฉพาะว่าหมายถึงคน
คนไหน หรือของสิ่งไหน

- e.g. 1. *That* rose is hers.
2. What are *those* boys doing?
3. *Such* a thing is the power of God.

Note 2. **Forms :** จงสังเกตรูปของ **Demonstrative Pronouns**
and **Adjectives** ต่อไปนี้ เพื่อสะดวกในการเปลี่ยนพจน์

<i>Singular</i>		<i>Plural</i>	
<i>Prons.</i>	<i>Adjs.</i>	<i>Prons.</i>	<i>Adjs.</i>
1. This	This book	These	These books.
2. That	That book	Those	Those books.
3. One	—	Ones	—
4. This one	—	These ones	—
5. That one	—	Those ones	—
6. The former	The former book	—	—
7. The latter	The latter book	—	—
8. Such	Such book	Such	Such books.
9. Other	Other book	Others	Other books.

นักเรียนควรศึกษา การใช้คำ Demonstratives
เหล่านี้ให้เข้าใจ ทั้งความหมายและหน้าที่ เพื่อจะได้
เป็นประโยชน์ต่อไป

Note 3. **Uses of Demonstratives :**

การใช้ Demonstratives มีดังต่อไปนี้

1. **This (นี้), These (เหล่านี้) :**

ใช้เพื่อเฉพาะบุคคลหรือสิ่งของที่อยู่ใกล้ตัวผู้พูด

e.g. 1. **This** is my sister.

These are my sisters.

2. **This** ring is yours.

These rings are yours.

2. **That** (นั่น), **Those** (เหล่านั้น) :

ใช้เพื่อบ่งเฉพาะหรือบุคคล หรือสิ่งของที่อยู่ห่างจากตัวผู้พูดออกไป

e.g. 1. What is **that** ?

What are **those** ?

2. Who is **that** man ?

Who are **those** men ?

3. **One** (คน/สิ่งหนึ่ง), **Ones** (หลายคน/สิ่ง) :

เป็น Pronoun ที่มี Articles นำหน้าได้อย่าง Nouns และเป็นพหูพจน์ได้โดยการเติม "s" และยังกล่าวหนักยังมาตามหลัง this, that, these, those ได้ด้วย

e.g. 1. I don't like **this one**.

2. Can you show me a better **one** ?

3. Large **ones** are better than small **ones**.

4. Which **one** do you prefer, this or that ?

5. **One** should do **one's** duty.

4. **The former** (คน/สิ่งแรก), **The latter** (คน/สิ่งหลัง) :

เราใช้ "The former" เมื่อเรากล่าวถึงคน หรือสิ่งแรก และเราใช้ "The latter" เมื่อเรากล่าวถึงคนหรือสิ่งหลัง ในจำนวนสองคนหรือสองสิ่งเท่านั้น

e.g. 1. Shakespeare and Goeth were great poets.

The former was an Englishman, *the latter* German.

2. Of the two men, I prefer *the former* to *the latter*.

5. **Such** (มากเช่นนั้น/นี้) :

Such เป็น Pronoun ที่แสดงความหมายว่า “มากเช่น
ที่กล่าวมาแล้ว หรือเป็นของชนิดนั้น”

e.g. 1. *Such* is the power of nature.

2. *Such* is the love of man.

6. **Other** (คน/สิ่งอื่น), **Others** (คน/สิ่งอื่น ๆ) :

เราใช้ “Other” ขยาย Nouns หรือเป็น Pronouns ใน
ความหมายที่ว่า “ไม่ใช่สิ่งนี้ แตกต่างจากสิ่งนี้”
และเป็น Pronoun นาม “the” มาหน้าได้ และมีรูปเป็น
พหูพจน์ โดยการเติม “s” บางทีก็มี “One” มาตาม

e.g. 1. This one is better than *the other*.

2. Please tell all *the others*.

3. Give me *the other one*, not this one.

4. You can hold it in your *other* hand.

Exercises

A. Answer the following sentences.

e.g. 1. Whose is that ?

That is mine.

2. Whose is that diamond ring ?

That diamond ring is mine.

3. Whose diamond ring is that ?

That is my diamond ring.

1. Whose is this ?

2. Whose is this radio ?

3. Whose television is that ?

4. Which are our seats, these or those ?

5. Which is better ; this one or that ?

6. Will you take this one or that ?

7. What should one do ?

8. Of the two girls which is older ?

9. Which one has won the beauty contest ?

10. Which is heavier, this one or the other one ?

11. Which do you prefer, the former or the latter ?

12. Can you give me that one, not this one ?

13. Can I take the other book home ?

14. Is she such a good girl ?

15. Who can do such things ?

16. Which is brighter of the two boys.

B. *Make the following sentences plural :-*

e.g. **This** singer sings sweetly.

These singers sing sweetly.

1. That lady speaks English very well.
2. This newspaper belongs to that man.
3. The other box is made of iron.
4. That fish smells bad.
5. This watch is mine.
6. That baby cries every night.
7. Whose knife is this, yours or his ?
8. This cow gives very good milk.
9. Whose office is that, his or hers ?
10. That one is more proper in this place.
11. Whose hand-bag is that on the table ?
12. This photo is hers.
13. The other book is better than that one.
14. Whose dictionary is that, yours or mine ?
15. This lamp-shade is more beautiful than the other.
16. That switch was old and useless.
17. Whose bicycle is this, his or yours ?
18. That was his cigarette-case.
19. This was the old capital of Thailand.
20. Is that the place where that one lives.

C. Fill in each blank with a suitable **demonstrative**:-

e.g. 1. Of the two girls, the..... is prettier than the

Of the two girls, **the former** is prettier than **the latter**.

2. chair was made by man.

This chair was made by **that** man.

1. apple is a good
2. colour is darker than the
3. Which do you mean ?
4. cloth can last longer than any
5. I wish to take the other
6. Of the two ladies, is an English is an Irish.
7. Can you show me a better ?
8. I have only large, not small
9. beasts were found in jungles.
10. Among land animals the elephant is larger than any
11. We should respect who respect us.
12. buildings belong to me, but belong to my wife.
13. chapter is more interesting than
14. Of the two lessons, is easy; is very hard.
15. Which of the three is your brother,
..... or or ?

LESSON 11

Distributive Pronouns and Adjectives

Note 1. “Distributive” แปลว่า “จำแนกหรือแจกจ่าย” ฉะนั้น

(a) “Distributive Pronouns:” คือเป็นชื่อของ Pronouns
ที่ใช้แทน Nouns ในความหมาย ที่แบ่งแยกบุคคลหรือ
สิ่งของออกจากหมวดหมู่

- e.g. 1. The teacher gave a book to **each** of us.
2. **Either** of the two is mine.
3. I want **neither** of them.

(b) Distributive Adjectives ก็เป็นชื่อของ Adjectives
ที่หาหน้าทนาย Nouns เพื่อแบ่งแยก Nouns นั้นออก
จากหมวดหมู่เหมือนกัน

- e.g. 1. The teacher gave two books to **each**
boy.
2. **Each** person wanted to try.
3. **Every** man has a chance in life.

Note 2. Uses of Distributive Pronouns and Adjectives

หลักการใช้ดังนี้ :—

1. **Each** (แต่ละคน/สิ่ง), **Every** (ทุก ๆ คน/สิ่ง) :

ทั้งต้องมีคามหมายว่า “ทั้งหมด” แต่ที่แตกต่างกันคือว่า

Each (Adj. & Pron.): ใช้กับคนหรือสิ่งของ เพียงแต่ต้อง
หรือมากกว่าพอสมควร

Every (Adj.) : ใช้กับคนหรือสิ่งของ ในจำนวนมาก ๆ
คำทั้งต้องนใช้กับ Nouns ที่เป็นเอกพจน์เท่านั้น

- e.g. 1. **Each** soldier has a gun.
2. She gives a notebook to **each**.
3. **Every** man has his own way.

2. **Everyone** (ทุก ๆ คน), **Everybody** (ทุก ๆ คน),
Everything (ทุก ๆ สิ่ง) :

Everyone (Pron.) และ **Everybody** (Pron.) ใช้แทนคนใน
ความหมายอย่างเดียวกัน

Everything (Pron.) ใช้แทนเฉพาะสิ่งของ
เมื่อเป็น Subjects Pronouns ทั้งสามนี้ต้องใช้ตามด้วย
Singular Verbs

- e.g. 1. **Everyone** likes him.
2. **Everybody** cheered him.
3. **Everything** was ready.
4. She hates **everything** of his.

3. **Either** (คน/สิ่งหนึ่ง คน/สิ่งใดก็ได้)

Neither (คน/สิ่งหนึ่ง คน/สิ่งใดก็ได้)

Either (Pron. & Adj.) ใช้ในประโยคบอกเล่า (Positive)

เพื่อแทนหรือขยาย Nouns ในความหมายที่ว่าคนหนึ่งคน

ใดหรือสิ่งหนึ่งสิ่งใด ในสองคนหรือสองสิ่งก็ได้

Neither (Pron. & Adj.) = not either เป็นปฏิเสธ

คำทางต้องนเมื่อเป็น Subject กริยาต้องเป็นเอกพจน์

e.g. 1. **Either** of the two books is good enough.

2. I don't want **either** of them.

3. **Either** one is quite good.

4. You can go by **either** road.

5. **Neither** of the two girls is pretty.

6. **Neither** girl is pretty.

7. I want **neither** of them.

Exercises

A. Answer the following sentences positively and then negatively where possible:-

e.g. 1. Will you take **either** of them ?

Yes, I will take **either**.

No, I won't take **either**.

or No, I will take **neither**.

1. Do you find **either** of these good ?

2. Can **either** of you stay at home alone ?

3. Is **neither** of the books used in schools ?
4. Have you gone through **either** book ?
5. Can you write by **either** hand ?
6. Can I go to the station by **either** road ?
7. Which of the two will you take ?
8. Which of the two satisfies you ?
9. Can I light **either** end of your cigarette ?
10. Can you trust **either** of the men ?

B. *Complete each of the following sentences, using everyone, everybody, everything, every, or each.*

e.g. He greeted he knew.

He greeted **everyone** he knew.

1. She knows in the world.
2. comes to a man who works and waits.
3. He showed me he had.
4. It is impossible to please
5. I shall give her she wants.
6. can answer such an easy question.
7. Can you tell you have heard ?
8. You cannot have you want.
9. Have you seen at the meeting ?
10. Do you know person in the house ?
11. dog has his day.
12. rose would smell as sweet.
13. should know what is good or bad.

14. must learn how to stand on his own legs.
15. When you die you cannot take.....with you.
16. The father gave.....of his children a book.
17.is not too old to learn.
18. He gave two apples to.....boy.
19.one of them has to work very hard.
20.loves peace but cannot avoid war.

LESSON 12

Quantitative Adjectives and Pronouns

Note 1. “Quantitative” แปลว่า “เกี่ยวกับปริมาณ” ฉะนั้น

(a) Quantitative Pronouns : ^{คำ}ที่ใช้เป็นชื่อของ
Pronouns ^{คำ}ที่ทำหน้าที่แทน Nouns เพื่อบอกปริมาณ

- e.g. 1. I know **some** of the boys here.
2. **Some** of the butter has been eaten.
3. That is the best **one**.
4. Only good **ones** are wanted.

(b) Quantitative Adjectives : ^{คำ}ที่ใช้เป็นชื่อของ
Adjectives ^{คำ}ที่ทำหน้าที่ขยาย Nouns เพื่อบ่งปริมาณ
ของ Nouns นั้น

- e.g. 1. He has **some** books at home.
2. Have you **any** thing to tell me ?
3. He has **little** hope for his exam.

Note 2. Forms : ^{รูปร่าง}การเกิดดรูปรูปของ Quantitative Pronouns
and Adjectives คือไปน :-

<i>Pronouns</i>	ศัพท์	<i>Adjectives</i>
1. One	หนึ่ง	one book
2. some	บ้าง	some { books bread
3. any	บ้างไหม	any { book bread
4. -	-	no { book bread
5. none	ไม่มีเลย	-
6. much	มาก	much bread.
7. many	มาก	many bread.
8. little	ไม่ใคร่มี	little bread.
9. few	ไม่ใคร่มี	few books.

Note 3. **Uses of Quantitative Pronouns and Adjectives :**

นักเรียนควรศึกษาวิธีใช้ และ ความหมายของคำต่อไปนี้ให้ดี
เข้าใจ เพื่อจะได้ประโยชน์ในบทเรียนต่อไป

1. **One** (คน/สิ่งหนึ่ง) : เราใช้

One (Pron. & Adj.) คู่กันกับ **Other** (อีกคน/สิ่งหนึ่ง)

เมื่อเป็น Singular และ

Ones (Pron.) คู่กันกับ **Others** (คน/สิ่งอื่น ๆ) เมื่อ

เป็น Plural

คำทั้งสี่ของนใช้กับ Nouns ทั้งนับได้และไม่นับ เพื่อ
ให้เห็นความแตกต่างระหว่าง บุคคลหรือสิ่งของที่กล่าวถึง

- e.g. 1. He held a book in **one** hand and a pen
in the **other**.
2. The **one** said "Yes", but the **other** said
"No".
3. These **ones** are good, but the **others** are bad.

Exercises

Supply "**one**" or "**ones**" or "**other**" or "**others**" as
required.

- e.g. 1. That..... is too small, but the..... is
too big.
That **one** is too small, but the **other** is
too big.
2. These..... are not wanted, and we are
looking for.....
These **ones** are not wanted, and we are
looking for **others**.
1. That steamer goes down the river, but.....
goes up.
 2. This..... is an old car, but..... is a new.....
 3. These..... are more comfortable seats than.....
 4. That lesson is easy. is very difficult.
 5. That is much better than this.....

6. A cigarette has a light onend and a fool on
7. He stood with leg on the floor and..... on the chair.
8. Only is on the table, but the are on the shelf.
9. She was waiting for the bus with a bag inhand and a book in.....
10. There were two persons in the room; was a man and was a woman.

2. **Some** (บ้าง), **Any** (Quest. บ้างไหม, Neg. ไม่-เลย) :

Some (Adj. & Pron.) : พร้อมด้วยคำประกอบคือ

Somebody, Someone, Something และ Somewhere.

ใช้กับประโยคบอกเล่า (Affirmative) ดู Note หน้า 32

Any (Adj. & Pron.) : พร้อมด้วยคำประกอบคือ

Anybody, Anyone, Anything และ Anywhere.

ใช้กับประโยคคำถาม (Questions) และปฏิเสธ.

(Negatives)

e.g. 1. Take **some** if you like it.

2. **Some** of them can speak English very well.

3. **Some** vegetables are good to the body.
4. Is there **any** hotel in this town?
5. There isn't **any** eating shop here.
6. I don't like **any** of them.

Exercises

A. Make the following sentences **negative** :-

Note : (1) เติม "not" ลงระหว่างกริยาช่วย และกริยา
 ดำเนิน

- (2) ถ้าไม่มีกริยาช่วยใดๆ ให้เติม **do (does, did)**
not ลงหน้ากริยาดำเนิน แล้วเปลี่ยนกริยา
 ดำเนินเป็นรูปปกติ (Infinitives)

e.g. 1. The girls have gathered **some** flowers.
 The girls have **not** gathered **any** flowers.

2. The man **drinks some** wine in the morning.

The man **does not drink any** wine in the morning.

1. There are some pictures in the book.
2. She bought some vegetables from the market.
3. I have seen her somewhere before.
4. The boy took away some oranges.
5. The child wants some more cake.

6. I heard some news about it this morning.
7. The patient needs some fruit.
8. He has some of the books.
9. There is someone in the room.
10. I saw somebody waiting for you.
11. They found some flowers in the garden.
12. She must be somewhere here.
13. Please give him something to eat.
14. Put some more salt in the soup.
15. They want some paper and ink.

B. *Make the following sentences interrogative :-*

Note : (1) เขากินข้าวช่วยไปได้อีก Subjects

(2) ถ้าไม่มีกิริยาช่วยใด ๆ ให้เติม do (does, did)

ลงหน้า Subjects แล้วเปลี่ยนกิริยาเป็นรูป
ปกติ

e.g. 1. He **saw someone** in the dark corner.

Did he **see anyone** in the dark corner ?

2. The treasure **is somewhere** near the tree.

Is the treasure **anywhere** near the tree ?

1. He asked someone the way to the post-office.
2. There is some trouble with her.
3. He would like some more tea.

4. Someone took the book from the table.
5. There is something to do now.
6. You are sure there is somebody in the room.
7. I can get the medicine somewhere in Bangkok.
8. I will get something from him.
9. You heard someone speaking outside.
10. You gathered some fruits from the tree.
11. His father gave him some new clothes.
12. The driver saw somebody in front of him.
13. Some flowers have been in bloom.
14. There is some chalk in the box.
15. The purse was found somewhere there.

C. *Make the following sentences affirmative :-*

e.g. 1. ***Have*** you ***forgotten anything*** important ?
 You ***have forgotten something*** important.

2. There ***wasn't any*** water in the pond.
 There ***was some*** water in the pond.

1. There are not any beggars in New York.
2. He wouldn't like any more coffee.
3. Were there any cattle by the river ?
4. I didn't lose my purse anywhere in the garden.
5. Did you see anyone behind the house ?
6. I didn't pick up any money from the floor.
7. Did she see anything at the gate ?

8. He hasn't had anyone to help him.
9. Did you put the pen anywhere amongst the papers ?
10. Didn't you tell him any secret of yours ?

D. Supply "**some**" or "**any**" as required ;—

e.g. We must order more rice or we shall not have left.

We must order **some** more rice, or we shall not have **any** left.

1. I'm sorry there isn't more hope for his recovery.
2. I haven't had letters from him for a year.
3. Ask him to bring me more chalk. There isn't in this drawer.
4. Put sugar in your tea ; it needs more.
5. He offered me money, but I didn't take
6. Is there one here who can speak English ?
7. This morning there were dark clouds, but there wasn't rain.
8. Try of these mangoes but be careful, don't eat green ones.
9. Give the dog food ; it hasn't had thing for two days.

10. You can have more cake because I have eaten
11. Don't put more sugar in the coffee; we need more milk.
12. You must have ink and paper, otherwise you can't write thing.
13. He doesn't eat vegetable, but he wants more meat.
14. I asked her for more bread, but she said she hadn't
15. He didn't want more food, but he is in need of clothes

3. No (Adj.), None (Pron) :

เราใช้คำทั้งสองกับ Nouns ทั้งนับได้และไม่ได้ เพื่อทำให้ความหมายของประโยคเป็นปฏิเสธ (Negative)

No (ไม่มี) = not at all หรือ not any.

ใช้ขยายหน้า Nouns คำประกอบมีดังต่อไปนี้
on one, nobody, nowhere, nothing.

None (ไม่มีเลย) = no one

ส่วนมากใช้แทน Nouns ที่นับได้ มีความหมายเป็นได้ทั้งเอกพจน์และพหูพจน์

- e.g. 1. I have **no** friends.
2. I have **none**.

Exercises

A. Rewrite the following sentences, using "**no**" in place of "**not any**"

e.g. He **didn't** give me **anything** to eat.

He gave me **nothing** to eat.

1. There are not any fruits on the tree.
2. He has not any time to do the work.
3. There is not anyone in the house.
4. I didn't see anybody on the way.
5. The poor child has not any coat to wear in winter.
6. I won't give my photo to anyone.
7. In the cave we didn't find anything.
8. He doesn't want any more of it.
9. My father cannot see anything without his glasses.
10. There was not any priest in the temple.
11. You haven't put any sugar in the tea.
12. There is not anywhere for me to sleep.
13. We don't like any girl with bad temper.
14. There aren't any clouds in the sky.
15. There isn't anything for him to hope for.

B. Give negative short answers to the following sentences, using "no"-forms :-

e.g. What did he give you on your birthday ?

Nothing.

1. Who told you to come here ?
2. Where are you going ?
3. What is he doing at school ?
4. Where has she been ?
5. What do you want with me ?
6. Who is she talking to ?
7. How much money do you have with you ?
8. What are you going to do with your watch ?
9. Where are you going to stay during the holidays ?
10. Who do you want to see ?
11. How many do you want to take ?
12. How much does the paper cost ?
13. Who are you going to live with ?
14. What have you done today ?
15. Where shall I see you again ?

C. Give short answers to the following sentences :-

Note : (1) เราใช้ "either" เมื่อตอบรับ (Positive) ระบุ

หว่างของสองสิ่ง หรือ คนสองคน และ

(2) เราใช้ "neither" เมื่อตอบปฏิเสธ (Negative)

เพราะ neither = not either

(3) เราใช้ "not yet" เมื่อตอบปฏิเสธกับคำถาม
ที่เป็น Present Perfect Tense

e.g. 1. Which of the two flowers do you like ?
Either.

2. Which of the two girls is your sister ?
Neither.

3. Have you had your breakfast ?
No, not yet.

1. Will you come to see me or my wife ?

2. Which do you prefer, tea or coffee ?

3. Have you done your work ?

4. Which pen belongs to you, this or that ?

5. Which is yours, this or that ?

6. Where have you been, to haven or heaven ?

7. Where will you go, to heaven or hell ?

8. Has she gone to bed ?

9. Will you take French or German ?

10. Which is your bicycle, this one or the other ?

4. **Much** (Adj. & Pron), **Many** (Adj. & Pron) :

Much = ปริมาณมาก ; ใช้กับ Nouns ที่นับไม่ได้

Many = จำนวนมาก ; ใช้กับ Nouns ที่นับได้

ถึงแม้ว่า “many” จะปรากฏอยู่ในประโยคบอกเล่าก็ตาม ก็ไม่ควรที่จะจดจำเอาไปใช้ เพราะตามหลักเกณฑ์ คำทั้งสองนี้ใช้ในประโยคคำถาม (Questions) และประโยคปฏิเสธ (Negative) เท่านั้น

- e.g. 1. Does he have **much** time ?
 2. He doesn't have **much** time.
 3. Does he have **many** friends ?
 4. He doesn't have **many** friends.

ในประโยคบอกเล่า (Affirmative) เราใช้
a lot of (= มากมาย) กับ Nouns ทั้งนับได้และไม่ได้
 แต่ **a great deal of** (= มากมายก่ายกอง) กับ Nouns
 ที่นับไม่ได้เท่านั้น

- e.g. 1. He likes **a lot of** sugar in tea.
 2. **A lot of** women are rich in appearance.
 3. **A great deal of** wine is drunk in France.

Exercises

A. Change each of the following sentences from **negative** to **affirmative** :-

- e.g. 1. She doesn't have **much** money.
 She has **a great deal of** money.
 2. They aren't **many** soldiers at the border.
 They are **a lot of** soldiers at the border.

1. I don't have much work to do.
2. He doesn't pay much attention to his study.
3. There aren't many books in the library.
4. There were not many interesting things there.
5. She isn't in need of much help.
6. I never eat much, and never earn much.
7. He won't say much about anything.
8. There were not many letters this morning.
9. He did not give me much advice on the matter.
10. Many persons will not be present at the party.

B. *Change each of the following sentences from affirmative to negative :-*

- e.g. 1. The girl has plucked **a lot of** flowers.
The girl hasn't plucked **many** flowers.
2. He spent **a great deal of** time on writing.
He didn't spend **much** time on writing.
1. You shall find a great deal left.
 2. She has a lot of hope for the job.
 3. He will give you a lot of trouble.
 4. Your uncle talked a great deal of you.
 5. A lot of my friends know her.
 6. It will give you a great deal of happiness.
 7. I think the teacher knows a lot.
 8. A friend of mine can play a lot of games.
 9. There are a lot of questions a child can answer.
 10. A boy usually wastes a lot of time for nothing.

C. *Change each of the following sentences from affirmative into questions :-*

e.g. The study of English needs **a great deal of** attention.

Does the study of English need **much** attention ?

1. They are giving me a great deal of worry.
2. We still have plenty of time left.
3. He can eat a lot every time.
4. A lot of soldiers were killed during the war.
5. She has a large number of friends here.
6. A large quantity of earth must be taken away.
7. You will have a lot of happiness in future.
8. A large number of houses were blown down in the storm.
9. I want a lot of books to read.
10. She has done a great deal to make her son happy.

D. *Change each of the following sentences into statement :-*

e.g. 1. Will there be **much** rain this year ?
There will be **a lot of** rain this year.

2. Has she **much** trouble ?
She has **a lot of** trouble.

1. Didn't she write many books ?
2. Hasn't he asked me about it many times ?

3. Won't he show me many letters ?
4. Aren't there many cars in the garage ?
5. Haven't they much power to do that ?
6. Hasn't she put much flour in it ?

5. **Little** (Pron. & Adj.). **Few** (Pron. & Adj.) ;

คำทั้งสองนี้ใช้ในความหมายที่แปลว่า “ไม่ใคร่มี”

เป็นปฏิเสธ

Little ใช้กับ Nouns	ที่นับไม่ได้	} = hardly any. = ไม่ใคร่มี
Few ใช้กับ Nouns	ที่นับได้	

- e.g. 1. He has **little** doubt about it.
 2. You can get very **little** from him.
 3. He is a man of **few** words.
 4. **Few** can live without money.

Exercises

Supply “**little**” or “**few**” in each of the following:—

- e.g. 1. of students go to school on Sunday.
Few of the students go to school on Sunday.
2. I haven't seen it ; I can tell you
 about it.
 I haven't seen it ; I can tell you **little**
 about it.

1. I haven't studied French before; I have.....
knowledge of it.
2. people can work without rest.
3. He is very stupid; he has.....sense in him.
4. The question is very difficult;can answer it.
5. The man is very ill; he can eat.....food.
6. persons can live over a hundred years.
7. He is very lazy; he takes.....interest in his
study.
8. A lot wish to live long, but.....desire to die
young.
9. How can she be fat because she eats.....?
10.returned home; nearly all were killed.

LESSON 13

The Twenty-Four Helping Verbs

Note 1. **Helping Verbs :** คือกริยาที่มีคุณสมบัตพิเศษ 24 คำ ซึ่งโดยตำแหน่ง ส่วนมากมานำหน้ากริยาสำคัญในประโยคเพื่อทำให้กริยานั้นมีความหมายชัดเจนยิ่งขึ้น และเป็นกริยาที่สามารถรวมเข้ากันกับรูปย่อของ "not" ได้ด้วย
ดู Note 5 หน้า 96

- e.g. 1. *Is* there anyone here ?
Isn't (Is not) there anyone here ?
2. I *have* seen him once.
I *haven't* (have not) seen him once.
3. She *may* be at home.
She *mayn't* (may not) be at home.
4. You *must* do that again.
You *mustn't* (must not) do that again.

Note 2. **Forms of Helping Verbs :** กริยาทั้ง 24 คำตามที่กล่าวมาแล้ว ได้จัดไว้ในสองคอลัมน์ทางขวามือ ส่วนลําดับคอลัมน์ทางซ้ายมือเป็น Non-Finites ซึ่งจะนำมากล่าวในหน้าต่อไป

<i>Infinitives</i>	<i>Present Participle</i>	<i>Past Participle</i>	<i>Present Tense</i>	<i>Past Tense</i>
be	belong	been	am, is, are	was, were
have	having	had	have, has	had
do	doing	done	do, does	did
—	—	—	shall	should
—	—	—	will	would
—	—	—	can	could
—	—	—	may	might
—	—	—	must	—
—	—	—	need	—
—	—	—	dare	—
—	—	—	—	used

Note 3. **Infinitives, Present Participles, Past Participles.**

รูปกริยาทางตามชนิดนี้มีชอรวมกัน เรียกว่า **Non - Finites**

(a) **Infinitives** : เป็นชื่อของกริยารูปปกติ นั้นหมายความว่า ไม่มีการเติมหรือตัดส่วนใด ๆ ของกริยารูปนี้ เมื่อทำหน้าที่ในการสร้างประโยค และส่วนมากมักมี "to" นำหน้า

- e.g. 1. *To see is to believe.*
 2. You can *do* it yourself.
 3. He must *be* here before time.

(b) **Present Participles** : เป็นชื่อของกริยาที่เรียกว่า
 “ing”-form นั้นหมายความว่า กริยา^{นี้}รูปนี้จะต้องลง
 ท้ายด้วย “ing” ตามหลักเกณฑ์

- e.g. 1. They are *working* very hard.
 2. He is *looking* at you.
 3. *Seeing* a tiger, he ran away.

(c) **Past Participles** : หรือบางที่เรียกว่า Passive
 Participles คือ กริยาช่อง 3 ดูหลักการเปลี่ยนกริยา
 เป็น Past และ Past Participles

- e.g. 1. Where have you *been* ?
 2. He has *done* his duty.
 3. No one was *seen* in the house.

Note 4. **Compound Verbs** : หมายถึงรูปกริยาที่ประกอบด้วย
Helping Verbs และ A principle Verb (กริยาดำคัญ) นัก
 เรียงต้องจำได้ว่า Helping Verb คำใด ต้องการ Non-
 Finite รูปไหนมาตาม ดังจะกล่าวไว้แต่เพียงย่อ ๆ ต่อ
 ไปนี้ :—

(a) **be** × **present p.** ^๕เมื่อเป็น Continuous Tenses
(be = is, am, are, was, were, being, been)

- e.g. 1. We *were learning* English.
2. They *are studying* French.
3. I *am singing* the song.

(b) **be** × **past p.** ^๕เมื่อเป็น Passive Voice.

- e.g. 1. The tiger *was shot* through the head.
2. The letters *were posted* then.
3. This book *is being printed*.

(c) **have** × **past p.** ^๕เมื่อเป็น Perfect Tenses.
(have = has, had, having)

- e.g. 1. They *have left* school.
2. We *had learnt* this subject before.
3. He *has been* to London.

(d) **do** × **Infin. without "to"** ^๕เมื่อทำให้ประโยคเป็น

ปฏิเสธหรือคำถาม (do = does, did)

- e.g. 1. She *doesn't know* you.
2. *Do* you *speak* German?
3. They *did* not *see* me.

(e) **shall, will** } × **Infin. without "to"** ^๕เมื่อทำให้
should, would }

^๕เป็น Future Tenses.

- e.g. 1. We **shall go** now.
 2. She **will like** the present.
 3. You **should help** yourself.

(f) **can, could, may, might, must, need, dare** } × Infin. without "to"

- e.g. 1. You **can do** it now.
 2. She **must believe** you.
 3. You **may go** out now.

(g) **ought, (used)** × Infin. with "to"

- e.g. 1. You **ought to tell** him the truth.
 2. I **used to sit** up late before.

Exercises

A. Put the verbs in brackets into the correct form:—

e.g. I have (open) the window.

I have **opened** the window.

1. I can't (lend) you any money.
2. I am (go) to the cinema tomorrow.
3. You may (leave) the room now.
4. He has (buy) a present for you.
5. They will (let) you go in.
6. He didn't (tell) me about it.
7. We could (win) the match easily.
8. He doesn't (speak) English; he speaks French..
9. You must (return) the book soon.
10. She used (give) him some money.

11. They are (watch) over the children.
12. You oughtn't (sign) your name.
13. You needn't (do) it any more.
14. The car has (be) (sell) to the man.
15. I haven't (hear) him saying the words.
16. I shall (let) you know.

B. Supply a proper form of verb in each of the following sentences .—

e.g. I have her smiling once.

I have **seen** her smiling once.

He used here as a child.

We have never of him since last year.

The rich ought the poor.

They are tennis now.

I dare not a lie.

You need not hard this year.

It may this afternoon.

They have to New York once.

A cat may at the king.

He will be to England very soon.

I don't your explanation.

He is for his spectacles.

What is being in the class.

I dare that he will a successful boy.

My father is to you.

16. We shall.....our new life from now on.
17. You needn't.....in a worry.
18. I must.....in a hurry.
19. The letter was.....to him last week.
20. A child cannot.....what is good or bad.

Note 5. **Negative Formation :**

(a) เราทำประโยคเป็นปฏิเสธได้โดยการเติม "not" ลงหลัง Helping Verbs ในภาษาเขียน และ "n't" ลงหลัง Helping Verbs ในภาษาพูด นอกจากนี้ "I am" เป็น "I'm not", "will" เป็น "won't", "shall" เป็น "shan't" และ "can" เป็น "can't"

Exercises

Turn the following sentences into negative :-

- e.g. 1. You must stay here alone.
You **mustn't (must not)** stay here alone.
2. You ought to tell a lie.
You **oughtn't (ought not)** to tell a lie.
3. He will believe you.
He **won't (will not)** believe you.
1. He can write French.
 2. It may be true.
 3. I love the flower much.

4. You must wait for me here.
5. She has got a good memory.
6. I know he dare try it.
7. My son used to get up early.
8. She might have known about it.
9. The man will stay here longer.
10. I know he will like it.
11. This ought to be done first.
12. You shall have the book tomorrow.
13. I am glad to hear the news.
14. She could find it out later.
15. He will tell you what to do.
16. You ought to depend on him.
17. I will tell her the truth.
18. He used to sit up late.
19. You will see what I can do.
20. You should fail in the exam.

(b) เราใช้ "do" เมื่อเป็น Present Simple Tense, "does" เมื่อ Subjects เป็นเอกพจน์บุรุษที่ 3, และ "did" เมื่อเป็น Past Tense เดิมลงหน้ากริยาดำคัญ แล้วทำรูปของกริยาดำคัญนั้นเป็น Infinitives ในการเปลี่ยนประโยคที่ไม่มีกริยาช่วยใด ๆ ให้เป็น Negatives

Exercises

Make the following sentences negative :-

e.g. 1. She lives in town.

She **doesn't** (**does not**) live in town.

2. I saw him there.

I **didn't** (**did not**) see him there.

1. He goes to school on foot every day.

2. She loves her sister very much.

3. They do that for you.

4. I dare to disturb him.

5. We have tea for our breakfast.

6. He needs money badly.

7. They use this book in school.

8. I had a talk with him yesterday.

9. He tries to understand it.

10. She wrote to me only once.

Note 6. **Interrogative Formation :**

(a) ในการทำประโยคให้เป็นคำถาม เอา **Helping**

Verbs ไปไว้หน้า **Subjects** แต่ถ้าในประโยคไม่มี

Helping Verbs ใดๆ ให้ใช้ Verb "to do" เป็น

กริยาช่วยแทน

Exercises

Make the following sentences interrogative :-

e.g. 1. She goes for a walk every morning.

Does she **go** for a walk every morning ?

2. He came here yesterday.

Did he **come** here yesterday ?

3. You **needn't** work so hard.

Needn't you work so hard ?

1. He used to stay in Bangkok.
2. You will have a New Year present.
3. I must do better next time.
4. Your duty ought to be done first.
5. You needn't be in such a hurry.
6. He daren't face me again.
7. She died at sunset yesterday.
8. The man didn't return home as usual.
9. It is me you mean.
10. It isn't time for me to go out.

(b) ในการทำประโยคให้เป็นปฏิเสธ (Interrogative Negative) เราเติม "not" ลงหลัง Subjects เมื่อเป็นภาษาเขียน และเมื่อเป็นภาษาพูด เอา "n't" เติมลงท้าย Helping Verbs ซึ่งอยู่หน้า Subjects

Exercises

Make the following sentences **interrogative-negative** :

e.g. 1. He **told** her something.

Did he not **tell** her something ? (Written)

Didn't he **tell** her something ? (Spoken)

2. A man **can** live without spirit.

Can a man not live without spirit ?

(Written)

Can't a man live without spirit ?

(Spoken)

1. He has a lot of money.
2. Shakespeare died in the year 1616.
3. She dare to call you a fool.
4. I have a better one than yours.
5. I must take away all these luggage.
6. Rarai is busy writing a letter.
7. I ought to answer that letter now.
8. She is going to marry Somchai next month.
9. You must always take care of yourself.
10. They were laughing at the mistake he made.

Note 7. **Formation of Short Answers** : ในการตอบคำถาม
 เราใช้ **Helping Verbs** ช่วย เพื่อให้คำตอบสั้นและ
 เข้าใจง่ายขึ้น โดยการกล่าว **Subjects** และ **Helping**
Verbs เท่านั้นในคำตอบ

Exercises

*Give short answers both **negative** and **positive** to the following questions:-*

e.g. 1. Did you see him ?

Yes, I did. = Yes, I saw him.

No, I didn't. = No, I didn't see him.

2. Are you reading now ?

Yes, I am. = Yes, I am reading now.

No, I'm not. = No, I'm not reading now.

3. Who broke the glass ?

Parai did. = Rarai broke the glass.

1. Who broke my pencil ?

2. Must I depend on you ?

3. Who teaches you German ?

4. Which is more lovely, the sun or the moon ?

5. Will you please come earlier next time ?

6. Didn't I ask you to make so much noise ?

7. Don't you wish to be a happy man ?

8. Do you understand the question ?

9. Has anyone ever seen the other 'side of the moon ?

10. Did they make the film in Hollywood ?

11. Do they make good wine in France ?

12. Can you answer the question ?

13. Have you ever seen a lion ?

14. Did it take you long to finish the work ?

15. Which is better, a book or a bag ?

Note 8. **Formation of Question-Tags** : เราทำ Question-Tags ได้โดยการตั้งประโยคหน้า (Statement) แล้วตามด้วยคำถาม (Tag) ซึ่งประกอบด้วย Subject และ Helping Verb เท่านั้น Subject และ Helping Verb ต้องเป็นคู่เดียวกันทั้งใน Statement และใน Tag สำหรับ Tag นั้น Helping Verb มานำหน้า Subject ถ้า Statement เป็น Positive (บอกเล่า) Tag ต้องเป็น Negative (ปฏิเสธ) และตรงกันข้าม ดังรูปประโยคย่อ ๆ :-

Statements *Tags.*

1. Subj. × AF. V × Obj., **AF n't × Subj. ?**

2. Subj. × AF n't. V × Obj., **AF × Subj. ?**

(AF = Helping Verb; V = Verb)

ข้อ 1. ต้องการคำตอบ "Yes" และแปลว่า "ใช่ไหม?"

2. ต้องการคำตอบ "No" และแปลว่า "ไม่ใช่หรือ?"

e.g. 1. You like the song. (Statement)

You **like** the song, **don't you ?**

(Question-tag)

Yes, I do.

(Answer)

2. He isn't a teacher. (Statement)

He **isn't** a teacher, **is he ?** (Question-tag)

No, he isn't.

(Answer)

Exercises

Make the following statements question-tags and answer them:-

e.g. 1. She found the book ?

She found the book, *didn't she* ?

Yes, she did.

2. He doesn't smoke.

He doesn't smoke, *does he* ?

No, he *doesn't*.

1. Life is hard these days.
2. You cannot trust him.
3. You will come here again tomorrow.
4. The man won't give me any help.
5. You thought he was dead.
6. You don't like that book.
7. Your friend ought to be faithful to you.
8. I mustn't leave the room before time.
9. She lives in the next house.
10. The boy will bring it tomorrow.
11. He made up his mind to marry her.
12. He hasn't returned from school.
13. You have taken your breakfast.
14. You don't like him making a noise.
15. We need to have summer holidays.
16. You needn't learn it by heart.

17. The men fought bravely.
18. He didn't go to the cinema.
19. He has got one like this.
20. You don't wish him to be happy.

Note 9. Addition to Remarks : ในการกล่าวเสริมข้อความใด ๆ เราวางรูปประโยคดังนี้คือ **Helping Verbs** ซึ่งเป็นรูปเดียวกันกับที่ปรากฏอยู่ในคำกล่าว (Remarks) ไปไว้หน้า **Subjects** ในข้อความที่กล่าวเสริมขึ้น (Addition) แต่หลัง "So" เมื่อเป็นบอกเล่า และหลัง "Neither" หรือ "Nor" เมื่อเป็นปฏิเสธ ดังรูปประโยคย่อ ๆ มีดังนี้

Remarks	Additions.
1. Subj. × AF. V × Obj.	So × AF × Subj.
2. Subj. × AF. V n't × Obj.	Nor } × AF × Subj. Neither }

ข้อความใน Addition แปลว่า "ก็เหมือนกัน"

- e.g. 1. I **love** flowers. **So does** my sister.
 2. She **can** speak English. **So can** her brother.
 3. You **mayn't** like it. **Nor may** she.
 4. No one **can** work without rest.
Neither can you.

Exercises

Make additions to the remarks given below:—

- e.g. 1. The world is round.....
 The world is round *and so is the moon.*
2. You didn't see him.....
 You didn't see him *and neither did I.*
3. He will pass the exam.....
 He will pass the exam. *So will you.*
1. The sun shines
2. I saw you
3. He hadn't any money on him
4. You may love the house
5. You mustn't do that again
6. She needn't go so early:
7. They ought to start at once
8. I know you quite well
9. You are very rich now
10. Indians live on rice
11. I have nothing in this world.
12. Rarai understands it
13. He hasn't bought the book
14. A girl loves sweets.

Note 10. **Agreement** : ในการ ดำเนินออก ซึ่งการเห็นพ้อง
 (Agreement) กับความคิดเห็นของคนอื่น เราวางรูปประ-
 โยคเหมือนกันกับการตอบแบบย่อ ๆ ดู Note (7) หน้า 100

แต่ Agreement นั้น นำด้วย "Yes" เมื่อมีความรู้สึกเห็น
 พ้องด้วยตามธรรมดา และนำด้วย "Of course" เมื่อแจ้ง
 อยู่แก่ใจมาแต่ก่อนแล้ว และนำด้วย "So" เมื่อมีความ
 แปลงใจเกิดขึ้น

e.g. 1. It is going to rain today.

Yes, it is.

2. She can sing very well.

Of course, she can.

3. Your trousers are torn.

So they are.

Exercises

Agree with the following remarks :-

e.g. 1. He works very hard this year.

Yes, he does.

2. She isn't clever at all.

No, she isn't, is she.

Note : การเห็นพ้องกับประโยคปฏิเสธ เราใช้ความรู้อยู่
 เรื่อง Question-tags ดู Note (8). แต่ไม่ใช่
 เครื่องหมายคำถาม และควรคิดเพียงท้ายลงคำ ดัง
 ตัวอย่างข้อ 2.

1. He doesn't like it.

2. She is very pretty.

3. Everyone must die.

4. It is not too late to learn.
5. Everybody knows he is a fool.
6. You needn't go all over again.
7. He died when the day broke.
8. She didn't do anything wrong.
9. It is very warm this afternoon.
10. He hasn't brought money with him.
11. He is in the hospital now.
12. She doesn't look very old for her age.
13. Your hair is turning grey now.
14. He is very kind to me.
15. We must start our journey now.

Note 11. **Disagreement** : ถ้าเรามีความ^๖รู้สึกไม่เห็นพ้องด้วยกับคำกล่าวใด ๆ เราขัด^๗หัก^๘เถียง^๙กับ^{๑๐}คำ^{๑๑}นั้น^{๑๒}เป็น^{๑๓}บอก^{๑๔}เล่า^{๑๕} เราก็^{๑๖}ค้าน^{๑๗}ด้วย^{๑๘}ประโยค^{๑๙}ปฏิเสธ^{๒๐} และ^{๒๑}กลับ^{๒๒}ตรง^{๒๓}กัน^{๒๔}ข้าม^{๒๕}ใช้ "Yes" หรือ "Oh yes" นำคำ^{๒๖}ค้าน^{๒๗}ที่เป็น^{๒๘}บอก^{๒๙}เล่า^{๓๐}
 "No" หรือ "Oh no" นำคำ^{๓๑}ค้าน^{๓๒}ที่เป็น^{๓๓}ปฏิเสธ^{๓๔}
 "But" นำคำ^{๓๕}ค้าน^{๓๖}คือ^{๓๗}ประโยค^{๓๘}คำถาม^{๓๙}

- e.g. 1. I heard you are very rich now.
 Oh no, I am not.
2. I think you can't do it.
 Yes, I can.
3. Why did you take my pen home?
 But I didn't.

Exercises

Disagree with the following remarks :-

e.g. Why did you hit the child ?

But I didn't.

1. He didn't know it.
2. You haven't paid for your food yet.
3. Why did you tell me a lie ?
4. I must thank you for your kindness.
5. He isn't afraid of anyone !
6. I have returned the money to you.
7. Why do you call me a fool ?
8. She is in need of your help.
9. I don't have any friend here.
10. They don't drink wine in France.
11. I can't bear to live without love.
12. Must I finish it now ? (I [✓]needn't)
13. Rarai needn't have permission (I [✓]must).
14. I heard she had passed her exam.
15. He won't come back any more.
16. You needn't work so hard this year.
17. She doesn't like your friend.
18. He has gone away from home.
19. Did they tell you everything ?
20. This is the end of helping verbs.

LESSON 14

Interrogative Pronouns

Note 1. พยายามเข้าใจความหมายของประโยคต่อไปนี้ และ
พิจารณาว่า คำที่ทำให้ประโยคเป็นคำถามนั้น หมายถึง
Nouns คำใด ในประโยคบอกเล่า

eg. 1. The **man** is in the room.

Who is in the room.

2. I want the **book**.

What do you want ?

3. **A book** is better than a bag.

Which is better; a book or a bag ?

4. I saw the **driver**.

Who (whom) did you see ?

เมื่อพิจารณาแล้วจะเห็นได้ว่า คำที่ทำให้ประโยค
เป็นคำถามนั้น เป็นคำที่ไร้แทน Nouns และทำหน้าที่อย่าง
Nouns คือเป็น Subjects หรือ Objects คำที่ทำหน้าที่
อย่างนั้นเรียกว่า **Interrogative Pronouns**

Note 2. **Forms and Uses of Interrogative Pronouns :**

(a) **Who** : ใช้แทนบุคคลในความหมายต่างๆ ไปไม่เกี่ยวข้อง
กับการเลือกในขอบเขตจำกัด เป็นได้ทั้ง
Subjects และ Objects โดยเฉพาะในภาษาพูด

(b) **Whom** : เป็นรูปกรรมของ "Who" ซึ่งทำหน้าที่เป็น Object ของ Verb หรือของ Preposition เท่านั้น ในภาษาเขียน

- e.g. 1. **Who** brings you here ?
 2. **Who** gave you the present ?
 3. **Who(m)** do you mean ?
 4. **Who(m)** are you looking at ?

(c) **Whose** : แปลว่า "ของใคร" เป็น Possessive form ของ "Who" และเป็น Interrogative Pronoun ที่ใช้แทนบุคคลเพื่อแสดงการเป็นเจ้าของ เป็นได้ทั้ง Subject และ Object

- e.g. 1. **Whose** is the car ?
 2. **Whose** is the pen ?
 3. **Whose** do you know ?

(d) **Which** : แปลว่า "คน/สิ่งไหน" เป็น Interrogative Pronoun ที่ใช้แทนได้ทั้งบุคคลและสิ่งของ ในความหมายให้เลือกระหว่างรอบเขตจำกัด ทั้ง Subject และ Object มีรูปเป็นอย่างเดียวกัน

- e.g. 1. **Which** of the houses belongs to her ?
 2. **Which** of them do you wish to see ?
 3. **Which** do you like better, tea or coffee ?

- (d) **What** : แปลว่า “อะไร” เป็น Interrogative Pronoun ที่ใช้แทนได้ทั้งบุคคลและสิ่งของ ในความหมายทั่วไป เป็นได้ทั้ง Subject และ Object

- e.g. 1. **What** happened ?
 2. **What** can I do for you ?
 3. **What** is your father ?

Exercises

- A. *Make the following sentences questions by changing the words in bold type into Interrogative :-*

Note : **Interrogative** : ต้องมาหน้าประโยคเสมอ และถ้า **Interrogative** นั้นเป็น **Objects** ก็ต้องเอา **Helping Verbs** ไปไว้หน้า **Subjects** ของประโยคด้วย

- e.g. 1. I went to see **him**.
Who(m) did I go to see ?
 2. We write with a **pen**.
What do we write with ?
 3. **The man** told you the story.
Who told you the story ?
 4. The watch is **mine**.
Whose is the watch ?
 5. **She** is older of the two.
Which is older of the two ?

1. You are learning **English** now.
2. **The teacher** is teaching science.
3. **Your friend** knows your name.
4. **Sugar** makes coffee sweet.
5. **That boy** is the tallest of all.
6. You said **the words**.
7. **The school-keeper** opened my drawer.
8. They have done **their work**.
9. **One** of the boys is the cleverest.
10. The bag is **my sister's**.
11. **One** of the girls is the queen of beauty.
12. **That pen** is better than **this one**.
13. **The student** gave you the flower.
14. **One** of the books is his.
15. **The servant** has eaten your ham.
16. **His uncle** asked me to come here.
17. The rose is **the girl's**.
18. You are reading **the newspaper**.
19. She is writing **a letter**.
20. You are very angry with **her**.

B. *Answer the following questions :-*

e.g. 1. **Whose** is the voice ?
It is the **boy's**.

2. **What** have you left at home ?
I have left **my pen** at home.

1. **What** have you done ?
2. **What** did you tell him ?
3. **Who** has taken my pen away ?
4. **What** is the teacher doing ?
5. **Who** is going for a walk with me ?
6. **Which** of the boys is your son ?
7. **Who(m)** do you live with ?
8. **Whose** is the car ?
9. **Who** cooks for you ?
10. **Which** do you like better, a hat or a house ?
11. **Whose** is the walking-stick ?
12. **Who(m)** is she angry with ?
13. **What** is a book used for ?
14. **Who** told you the news ?
15. **What** did she give me ?
16. **Who(m)** are you looking at ?
17. **Which** will you take, this or that ?
18. **Which** of the houses is yours ?
19. **Who(m)** are you waiting for ?
20. **Who** is making the noise ?

C. *Fill in the blanks with proper Interrogatives:-*

e.g. are you looking for ?

What are you looking for ?

1. is she laughing at ?
2. did you see yesterday ?

3. is the letter to ?
4. of the students is the oldest ?
5. do Europeans live on ?
6. cuts your hair ?
7. is better, to work or to play ?
8. the people say ?
9. is the hat ?
10. is the pencil, mine or yours ?
11. do you want to see ?
12. is better, to laugh or to cry ?
13. is a knife made of ?
14. is she waiting for ?
15. is more lovely ?
16. switched off the light ?
17. is reading there ?
18. does that word mean ?
19. would you like to have ?
20. gave you the cake ?

D. Put questions to the following answers, asking about the words in bold type :-

Note : บุรุษที่ 1. "I" เปลี่ยนเป็นบุรุษที่ 2 "You" และ
 กลับตรงข้าม แต่ "We" ถ้าหมายความว่าถึงคน
 ทั่วๆ ไปไม่เปลี่ยนแปลง

e.g. 1. I came to see **him**.

Who(m) did you come to see?

2. We wash clothes with **soap and water**.

What do we wash clothes with?

3. **Food** is better than **medicine**.

Which is better, **food** or **medicine**?

1. They are playing **football**.

2. **Rarai** found the purse under the table.

3. The camera is **the teacher's**.

4. My car is **the green one**.

5. I saw **her** at the dance last night.

6. She needs **money** very badly.

7. A paint is used for **painting**.

8. I like **fish** better than **meat**.

9. I prefer **English** to **French**.

10. **The other one** is more lovely.

11. She asked me **my name**.

12. I shall give you **a present** on the New Year Day.

13. The house is made of **wood**.

14. I wish to speak to **you**.

15. He doesn't agree with **me**.

16. You must wait for **her**.

17. My father gave me **a new suit**.

18. I rang **you** up this morning.

19. She loves **music** better than **painting**.

20. The office is **my father's**.

LESSON 15

Interrogative Adjectives

Note 1. Interrogative Adjectives : คือกำถามหาทนาย

Nouns เพื่อให้ประโยคเป็นคำถาม

- e.g. 1. **What** book are you reading ?
2. **What** work pleases you ?
3. **Which** way shall we go ?
4. **Which** pen belongs to the teacher ?
5. **Whose** bag is there ?
6. **Whose** baby is crying ?

จากตัวอย่างข้างบน เราจะเห็นได้ว่าคำ "what",
"which", และ "whose" มาข้างหน้า Nouns เหมือนกัน
กับ Adjectives และทำให้ประโยคเป็นคำถามด้วย

Note 2. Forms and Uses of Interrogative Adjectives :

(a) **What** × Noun : แปลว่า "คน/สิ่งของอะไร" ใช้ขยาย

Nouns เพื่อถามเกี่ยวกับการเลือก (Selection),
ปริมาณ (Quantity) หรือคุณลักษณะ (Specifica-
tion) จากจำนวนที่ไม่มีขอบเขตจำกัด และในความ
หมายกว้าง ๆ (vague)

- e.g. 1. **What** book do you want ?
 2. **What** people did you meet ?
 3. **What** amount of money do you have ?

(b) **Which** × **Noun** : แปลว่า “คน/สิ่งไหน” ใช้ขยาย Nouns
 เพื่อถามเกี่ยวกับ การเลือกจากหมู่ หรือจำนวนจำกัด
 ของบุคคลหรือสิ่งของ

- e.g. 1. **Which** girl of the two is your sister ?
 2. **Which** lesson are you studying ?
 3. **Which** one belongs to you ?

(c) **Whose** × **Noun** : แปลว่า “คน/สิ่งของใคร” ใช้ขยาย
 Nouns เพื่อถามเกี่ยวกับการเป็นเจ้าของ

- e.g. 1. **Whose** car did she sit in ?
 2. **Whose** voice is heard there ?
 3. **Whose** son are you ?

Exercises

A. Make the following sentences questions by changing the **adjectives** in bold type into **Interrogatives** :—

- e.g. 1. You like **red** colour better.
Which colour do you like better ?
 2. You like **red** colour.
What colour do you like ?

1. **That** one is better.
2. It is **the teacher's** car.
3. You are reading a **history** book.
4. That is **her** house.
5. **This** school is the best.
6. He lives in **Thonburi**.
7. You are drawing a picture **of a tree**.
8. **This** bird is prettier than **that** one.
9. She is sitting at **your** table.
10. They will go by **the 12.30** train.

B. *Answer the following questions :-*

- e.g. 1. **Whose** ruler is this, mine or yours ?
It is **my** ruler. or **Mine**.
2. **What** tie do you wear ?
I wear **silk** tie.

1. **Whose** house do you live in ?
2. **What** language are you studying ?
3. **Which** language is easier, English or German ?
4. **What** river flows through Ayuthya ?
5. **What** people live in Bangkok ?
6. **Which** girl won the beauty contest ?
7. **Whose** place did you build your house in ?
8. **Whose** answer is the correct one ?
9. **Which** shirt will you take, the white or the blue one ?
10. **What** train are you going by ?

11. **What** colour do you like best ?
12. **Which** child of your parents are you ?
13. **Whose** room did you go into ?
14. **What** cinema shall we go to ?
15. **What** country do you come from ?

C. Supply a suitable **Interrogative Adjective** in each of the following :-

e.g. car is on the road ?

Whose car is on the road ?

1. bus goes to Phayathai ?
2. hotel did you lodge that night ?
3. handkerchief is this, yours or his ?
4. pen are you writing with ?
5. pen do you borrow ?
6. pen is yours, this or that one ?
7. of these boys is the oldest ?
8. tooth is hurting you ?
9. friend is Rarai ?
10. colour does she like best, red or yellow or green ?
11. book are you writing ?
12. pet does he keep at home ?
13. present will your father give you ?
14. fish is it swimming there ?
15. camera do you want ?
16. photos does he have in the bag ?
17. eye of hers cannot see well ?

D. Put questions to the following answers, asking about the words in bold type:—

e.g. They speak **English** in England.

What language do they speak in England?

1. I am reading a **science** book.
2. I think the **green** one is better.
3. That is **your** desk.
4. She prefers **milk to coffee**.
5. That pair of compasses is **hers**.
6. **This** orange is sweeter than that one.
7. I went to the **Odeon** cinema.
8. I was born in the year **1940**.
9. She is wearing **her own** dress.
10. We shall go by **the other** way.
11. He is looking at the **tall** girl.
12. **The Chowphya** river flows into the Gulf of Thailand.

LESSON 16

Interrogative Adverbs

Note 1. **Interrogative Adverbs** : คำนว้คำท้ทำหน้ท้ขยย Verbs
เพื่อท้ทำป้ประโยชน์เป็นคำถามเกยวกับ ข้การ, เวล้, ดัณ
ที่, เหตุผล, ปริมาณ, แดะจ้ำนวนคร้งครว

- e.g. 1. *How* do you swim ? (Manner)
2. *When* did he arrive ? (Time)
3. *Where* do you live ? (Place)
4. *Why* did he come late ? (Reason)
5. *How* wide is the river ? (Degree)
6. *How often* do you go to pictures ? (Frequency)

Note 2. **Forms and Uses of Interrogative Adverbs** :

- (a) **When** : แปลว่า “เมื่อไร” ใช้ขยยกริย้ เมื่อมีคว้
ประสงค์ข้ย้การจะทรวมเกยวกับเวล้ โดยมากเกยวกับ
จุดของเวล้ (Point of Time) เมื่อการกระทำย้่างหน้
เกิดข้

- e.g. 1. **When** did you arrive ?
 2. **When** does the moon shine ?
 3. **When** can you begin your work ?

(b) **Where** : แปลว่า “ที่ไหน” ใช้ขยายกริยา เมื่อมีความประสงค์อยากระทราบเกี่ยวกับสถานที่ ๆ ซึ่งการกระทำเกิดขึ้น

- e.g. 1. **Where** can you live ?
 2. **Where** does he work ?
 3. **Where** did you see him ?

(c) **Why** : แปลว่า “ทำไม” ใช้ขยายกริยา เมื่อมีความประสงค์อยากระทราบเกี่ยวกับเหตุผล ว่าทำไมการกระทำนั้น ๆ จึงได้เกิดขึ้น

- e.g. 1. **Why** does he look very pale ?
 2. **Why** did she come back so late ?
 3. **Why** can't you eat anything ?

(d) **How** : แปลว่า “อย่างไร” ใช้ขยายกริยา เมื่อมีความประสงค์อยากระทราบเกี่ยวกับ อาการของการกระทำว่า มีลักษณะเป็นอย่างไร

- e.g. 1. **How** can you do the sum ?
 2. **How** is she getting on ?
 3. **How** do you like Bangkok ?
 4. **How** did he get the book ?

Exercises

A *Make the following sentences questions by changing the **adverbs** in bold type into Interrogative:-*

e.g. 1. You can swim **very well**.

How can you swim?

2. He went to bed **very late**.

When did he go to bed?

3. She lives **at Phyathai**.

Where does she live?

4. He died **because he was very old**.

Why did he die?

1. You met him **at the corner**.

2. They have their dinner **at eight o'clock**.

3. He entered the house **through the door**.

4. He can't work **because he is very weak**.

5. We shall go swimming **now**.

6. You work **at the hospital**.

7. It rained **very heavily** yesterday.

8. You told him a lie **because you were afraid of him**.

9. The sun rises **at six o'clock**.

10. She was **at home** at the time.

11. He spoke to you **very kindly**.

12. It rains **in the rainy season**.

13. He slept **at the hotel** last night.

14. You don't speak with him **because you are very angry**.

15. They returned home **at sun-set.**
16. She went to the party alone **by taxi.**
17. You were **in the house** at the time.
18. He behaved himself **very well.**
19. You did this **for her.**
20. He told it to you **last month.**
21. She is weeping **because she is very sad.**
22. Her house is **at the end of the lane.**

B. *Answer the following questions :-*

e.g. **How** do you come to school ?

I come to school **by bus.**

1. **How** does a bird fly ?
2. **Where** is she waiting for me ?
3. **When** did you go to see him ?
4. **How** did you go up country ?
5. **Why** is he absent from school ?
6. **Where** did he find his tie-pin ?
7. **When** does she begin her work ?
8. **How** will he travel to England ?
9. **Why** do they come here ?
10. **Where** can I lodge to night ?
11. **When** does the examination take place ?
12. **How** can you swim across the river ?
13. **Why** didn't you tell him the truth ?
14. **Where** shall I see you again ?
15. **When** did they reach London ?

16. **How** do you like the cigarette?
17. **Why** don't you study English?
18. **Where** is a lion found?
19. **When** can the work be finished?
20. **How** does he teach you?

C. Supply a suitable **Interrogative Adverb** in each of the following blank :-

e.g. was she dressed?

How was she dressed?

1. are you coming back?
2. does he often sleep late?
3. did you leave your bag there?
4. don't you buy a car?
5. does she wish to stay?
6. do you take her to pictures?
7. do they play football?
8. is your wife getting on?
9. are you working?
10. did you fall into the river?
11. shall I put it?
12. do we use blotting paper?
13. do you go for a swim?
14. did she come to Bangkok?
15. didn't she stay at home?
16. are you going to leave for Chiang Mai?
17. do you find the weather in Thailand?

18. shall I come here again ?
19. did the accident occur ?
20. does the world move ?
21. does the sun set ?

D. Put questions to the following answers, asking about the word or words in bold type:—

e.g. I was born **in the year 1940.**

When were you born ?

1. I like the picture **very much.**
2. They are going **to America.**
3. The train arrived **at 9.30.**
4. He loved her **more than anything.**
5. She sat **there** quietly all the time.
6. He will meet you **outside your office.**
7. A friend of mine speaks English **very well.**
8. I saw you **this morning.**
9. I drink coffee every morning **at home.**
10. The teacher spoke **very kindly** this morning.
11. They will arrive here **tomorrow.**
12. He can't work hard **because he is very weak,**

Note 3. ถ้าเรามีความประสงค์จะถามเพื่อต้องการทราบเกี่ยวกับ ปริมาณ (Quantity), จำนวน (Number), คุณภาพ (Quality) หรือ อากา (Manner) ก็ให้

เอา Adjectives หรือ Adverbs ตามความหมายที่^๑ต้อง
การมาตาม "How" เพื่อทำให้เป็นรูปคำถาม^๒ :-

- (a) **How x Adj.** : เป็นรูปทั่ว ๆ ไปของ Interrogatives ที่ทำ
หน้าทฤษฎาย Nouns และ Verbs ของประ-
โยคที่ต้องการ Adjectives

- e.g. 1. *How old* are you ?
2. *How wide* is the river ?
3. *How much* money do you have ?

- (b) **How x Adv.** : เป็นรูปทั่ว ๆ ไปของ Interrogatives ที่ทำ
หน้าทฤษฎาย Verbs ซึ่งต้องการ Adverbs

- e.g. 1. *How often* do you go for a swim ?
2. *How long* can a man live ?
3. *How far* can you walk ?

Exercises

A. Choose the correct form :-

Note : *How often* = ^๑ กี่ครั้ง ^๒ กี่หน

How long = นานเท่าไร

How far = ไกลเพียงไร

How old = อายุเท่าไร

How much = มีปริมาณมากเท่าไร ใช้กับ

Uncountable Nouns

How many = มีจำนวนมากเท่าไร ใช้กับ

Countable Nouns

ดู Note Ex. C. หน้า 128

e.g. How (much many) money do you have?

How **much** money do you have?

1. How (good well) is he to you?
2. How (good well) does he sing?
3. How (kind kindly) did she speak?
4. How (kind kindly) did she appear to you?
5. How (much many) students are there in this school?
6. How (much many) does the pen cost?
7. How (far long) is your house from here?
8. How (far long) will it take to get at the place?
9. How (quick quickly) can your car run?
10. How (quick quickly) is your son to learn?
11. How (high highly) did the mountain appear to you?
12. How (high highly) did he speak of her?
13. How (sad sadly) does she look?
14. How (sad sadly) was he to hear the news?
15. How (sad sadly) did she behave herself?
16. How (slow slowly) does the teacher teach?

B. Answer the following sentences:—

e.g. **How often** do you write to your father?

I write to him **twice** a month.

1. How much time do you have for the study of English?
2. How many persons can speak English here?
3. How far is the school from your house?
4. How well can he speak English?
5. How much work does she have to do?
6. How cold is the weather in England?
7. How many people were there at the meeting?
8. How soon will she return?
9. How much coffee do you drink a day?
10. How long will the world last?
11. How many letters do you receive a month?
12. How much did you spend last month?

C. Choose the correct form:—

Note : จงพิจารณาว่า คำวิเศษณ์ที่มาจากหลัง "How"
 นั้น ขยาย Pro (nouns) หรือ Verbs ถ้าขยาย
 Pro (nouns) ก็มีรูปเป็น Adjectives และถ้าขยาย
 Verbs ก็ต้องมีรูปเป็น Adverbs

e.g. 1. How (bright brightly) does the moon shine ?

How **bright** does the moon shine ?

2. How (quick quickly) does a jet fly ?

How **quick** does a jet fly ?

1. How (loud loudly) did Jane call for me ?

2. How (careful carefully) is your wife ?

3. How (noisy noisily) did they greet you ?

4. How (wise wisely) was the King ?

5. How (beautiful beautifully) did she dress herself ?

6. How (angry angrily) was she with her husband ?

7. How (quiet quietly) did the boy come in ?

8. How (quiet quietly) did the boy appear ?

9. How (kind kindly) did she speak to the little boy ?

10. How (gentle gently) did the lady look ?

11. How (brave bravely) did the soldiers fight ?

12. How (close closely) is she related to you ?

13. How (lovely lovingly) does the morning sunshine look ?

14. How (cruel cruelly) did he treat you ?

15. How (large largely) is your house ?

1) Supply a suitable **adjective** or **adverb** in each of the following sentences :-

e.g. How is the river ?

How **wide** is the river ?

1. How is the water in the river ?
2. How will you remain in America ?
3. How is Kuala Lumpur from Bangkok ?
4. How is the fish you have caught ?
5. How did the train move at full speed ?
6. How are you now ?
7. How is the weather in India ?
8. How did he treat you ?
9. How do you love me ?
10. How were you when you won the game ?

E. Put questions to the following sentences, asking about the words in bold type :-

e.g. My house is **about ten miles** from here.

How far is your house from here ?

1. I am **sixteen years old**.
2. The tiger is **as big as a lion**.
3. I shall remain here **for two weeks**.
4. She is **as beautiful as the full moon**.
5. It will take you **one year** to study it.
6. We go for a walk **twice** a week.
7. He had a talk with me for **ten minutes**.
8. The mountain is **two thousand feet high**.
9. The boy works **very** hard.

10. He did it *perfectly* well.
11. She has *a lot of* money with her.
12. *One hundred stangs* make a tical.
13. Charles can jump *very high*.
14. The teacher can speak French *as well as a Frenchman*.
15. I have been to New York *once*.



LESSON 17

The Present Continuous Tense

Note 1. จงสังเกตคำว่า Tense นี้ ประกอบด้วยกริยาอะไรบ้าง ทั้ง **Active** และ **Passive** และรูปประโยค (Sentences) ต่างๆ มีการวางระเบียบด้วยคำเป็นอย่างไร

(a) **Forms of Tense** : รูปกริยาแบบย่อๆ มีดังนี้

Active = **is (am, are) × V-ing.**

Passive = **is. (am, are) × being × Past. P.**

- e.g. 1. They are **reading** the books. (Active)
The books are **being read**. (Passive)
2. Some one **is singing** a song. (Active)
A song **is being** sung. (Passive)

(b) **Sentences** :

Affirmative : She **is sweeping** the floor.

Negative : She **is not (isn't) sweeping** the floor.

Interrogative : **Is (Isn't)** she **sweeping** the floor

Exercises

A. Change the verbs in brackets into the present participle (Verbs with "ing").

Note : เติม "ing" ลงหลัง Verbs แต่ถ้า Verbs นั้นลงท้ายด้วย "e" ก็ให้ตัด "e" ออกเสียก่อน แล้วจึงเติม "ing" และถ้า Verbs นั้น มีสระตัวเดียว และมีพยัญชนะมาตามตัวเดียว ก็ให้เติมพยัญชนะลงไปอีกตัวหนึ่ง แล้วจึงเติม "ing"

e.g. 1. They **are** (play) football now.

They **are playing** football.

2. She **is** (live) here at present.

She **is living** here at present.

3. The child **is** (run) over there.

The child **is running** over there.

1. Don't disturb him; he is (write) a letter.

2. We are (study) the present continuous tense now.

3. It is (rain) very heavily now; you will get wet.

4. Look, the plane is (take) off at this moment.

5. Look, the sun is (set) and the moon is (rise).

6. They are (travel) by train to Chiang Mai.

7. I am not (feel) well today; the weather is (get) bad.

8. Don't make any noise; the man is (die).
9. I am (go) to buy a new hat very soon.
10. They are (say) they are not (leave) the country this year.

B. Make the following sentences negative and interrogative :-

Note : เติม "not" ลงหน้ากริยาเมื่อเป็นปฏิเสธ และ เอา
กริยาช่วย (Verb to be) ไปไว้หน้า Subjects
เมื่อเป็นคำถาม

e.g. You **are writing** English.

You **are not (aren't) writing** English.

Are you **writing** English ?

1. You are telling the truth.
2. She is enjoying herself.
3. The servant is washing the clothes.
4. Your brother is knocking at the door.
5. They are learning a great deal.
6. The teacher is teaching literature.
7. It is getting very cold today.
8. They are listening to the teacher now.
9. The headmaster is making a very long speech.
10. He is thinking of you a lot.

C. Change the following sentences from **Active** to **Passive** :-

Note : เวลาเปลี่ยน **Active** เป็น **Passive** ให้เอา **Object**
ไปเป็น **Subject** ; เติม "being" ลงหน้ากริยาตัวแรก.
เปลี่ยนกริยาเป็น **Past Participle** (Verbs ช่อง 3);
และเอา **Subject** ไปเป็น **Object** ของ Preposition,
"by"

e.g. They **are catching** fish in the river.

Fish **are being caught** in the river by them.

1. The teacher is marking my exercise book.
2. The manager is smoking a cigar.
3. They are playing football in the field.
4. The bird is pecking an apple.
5. A thief is stealing your purse.
6. He is buying a pair of shoes.
7. The people are cheering the King and Queen.
8. The artist is drawing a new picture.
9. The man is cutting the tree.
10. The old lady is telling a story to the children

D. Choose the correct form :-

- e.g. 1. Your coat is (cutting being cut) by the tailor.
Your coat **is being cut** by the tailor.
2. They are (printing being printed) the book.
They **are printing** the books.

1. The gardener is (watering being watered) the flowers.
2. The men are (building being built) the bridge.
3. The boy is (punishing being punished) for being late.
4. I am (telling being told) them to go away.
5. I am (showing being showed) a beautiful drawing.
6. Somebody is (making being made) a mistake.
7. The robbers are (arresting being arrested) by the policemen.
8. The candidate is (questioning being questioned) by the examiner.
9. She is (carrying being carried) into the house.
10. I am (answering being answered) your question.
11. They are (having being had) their meal in the dinning room.
12. She is (speaking being spoken) to you now.

Note 2. Uses :

Tense นี้ ใช้แสดงการกระทำที่กำลังดำเนินไปใน
 ปัจจุบัน โดยไม่ต้องคำนึงถึงว่า การกระทำนั้นเกิดขึ้น
 เมื่อไรและจะจบลงเมื่อไร นึกถึงแต่เพียงคำว่า “เดี๋ยวนี้”
 (Now or At this moment) เท่านั้น

- e.g. 1. We **are listening** to the teacher now.
 2. The teacher **is teaching** English now.
 3. **Are** you **studying** the lesson ?
 4. We **are looking** at the black-board.

Exercises

A. Answer the following questions orally :-

Note : ครูถามพร้อมกับแสดงการกระทำต่อไปนี้ แล้วให้นักเรียนตอบ ทั้งการถามและการตอบควรดำเนินไปอย่างช้า ๆ

e.g. Teacher, walking,

Said : What **am I doing** ?

Student : You **are walking**.

Teacher : **Am I walking** ?

Student : Yes, you **are walking**.

Teacher : **Am I sitting** ?

Student : No, you **are standing**.

Teacher

Questioning

- | | |
|-------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| 1. Reading a book. | What am I doing ? |
| 2. Sitting at the table. | Where am I sitting ? |
| 3. Shutting the window. | Am I shutting the window ? |
| 4. Opening the window. | What am I opening ? |
| 5. Breaking a piece of chalk. | Am I writing with chalk ? |
| | What am I doing to the chalk ? |

- | | |
|---------------------------------|--|
| 6. Putting a pen on the table. | What am I doing ?
Am I taking the pen from the table ? |
| 7. Speaking with a student. | What are we doing ?
Am I fighting with Nai.....? |
| 8. Shaking hand with a student. | What am I doing with Nai.....?
Am I speaking with him ? |
| 9. Pointing at a student
— | Who am I pointing at ?
What is he doing ? |
| 10. Rubbing the black-board. | Am I rubbing the black-board?
What are you doing ? |

B. *Answer the following questions orally :-*

e.g. 1. Teacher : What **are** you **doing** ?

Student : I **am** **listening** to you.

2. Teacher : **Are** you **listening** to me ?

Student : Yes, I **am** **listening** to you.

3. Teacher : **Are** you **writing** a letter ?

Student : No, I **am** not **writing** a letter.

1. What are you learning ?

2. Are you learning history ?

3. Where are you sitting ?

4. What is your friend doing ?

5. Is your friend learning in this class ?

6. What are you looking at ?

7. Are you looking at me ?

8. Who are you speaking with ?
9. What is the sun doing ?
10. How is your father getting on ?
11. Is he still schooling ?
12. What book are they using ?
13. Is your teacher speaking English ?
14. What is he teaching ?
15. What are you speaking ?

C. *Answers the following questions :-*

e.g. What **is being taught** now ?
English **is being taught** now.

1. What is being cut by the gardener ?
2. Who is being chased by the policeman ?
3. How is the work being done by Somchai ?
4. What is being prepared by the cook ?
5. By whom is the room being cleaned ?
6. Whose book is being corrected by the teacher ?
7. What is being mended by the man ?
8. Are the flowers being grown by the gardener ?
9. Is the book being printed now ?
10. Why is the tree being cut down ?

Note 3. กริยา ต่อไป^๕ เป็นกริยา กระทำ^๑ เกิดขึ้น^๒ เกยวกับ^๓
ความ^๔รู้สึก^๕ นักคิดและจิตใจ^๖ ไม่มี^๗รูป^๘เป็น Continuous
Tense ต้องใช้ Present Simple Tense แทน

see	เห็น	understand	เข้าใจ
bear	ได้ยิน	know	ทราบ
feel	รู้สึก	want	ต้องการ
care	เกรงกลัว	wish	ปรารถนา
love	รัก	desire	ประสงค์
like	ชอบ	possess	ครอบครอง
hate	เกลียด	own	เป็นเจ้าของ
forgive	อภัย	refuse	ปฏิเสธ
notice	สังเกตเห็น	seem	ดูเหมือน
remember	จำได้	consist of	ประกอบด้วย
forget	ลืม	contain	บรรจุ
believe	เชื่อ	matter	เรื่องราว
be	เมื่อเป็นกริยาสำคัญ		

Exercises

Put the verbs in brackets into the correct tense :-

e.g. I (hear) you (go) to Chiang Mai tomorrow.

I **hear** you **are going to** Chiang Mai tomorrow.

1. (Be) you sure you (come) back soon ?
2. I (notice) she (wear) a new dress today.

3. I just (remember) now. She (come) to see me to day.
4. Of course he (love) the work he (do) now.
5. I (believe) she (go) to pictures to night.
6. She not (like) the way you (behave) yourself now.
7. I (hate) he (boast) too much.
8. She now (own) a shop that (sell) cloth.
9. Are you (look) where I (point)? You (see) anything.
10. I (see) you (work) very hard now.

Note 4. **Immediate Future :**

เราใช้กริยาใน The Present Continuous Tense โดยเฉพาะ "to be going to" แสดงการกระทำที่ ^{๑๕}ความรูสึก ^{๑๖}ว่า จะเกิดขึ้นในอนาคตอันใกล้ ^{๑๗}นั้นก็คือผู้ใช้กริยา ^{๑๘}รูปนี้ ต้องมีความรูสึกว่าการกระทำนั้นจะเกิดขึ้นในเร็ว ๆ นี้

e.g. 1. He **is going to** London tomorrow.

2. She **is coming** back soon.

3. What **are** you **going** to do?

Exercises

A. *Answer the following questions :-*

e.g. 1. When **are** you **going** to bed?

I **am going to** bed at 10 o'clock.

2. What **are** you **going to have** for dinner?

I **am going to have** fish for dinner.

1. What are you going to buy for your children ?
2. When are you going to finish the work ?
3. Who is he going to visit this evening ?
4. Aren't you coming with me for a walk ?
5. Is he going to stay with you or go away ?
6. How are you going to return home ?
7. How much are you going to pay for it ?
8. Is the sun going to set soon ?
9. When is she going to read my letter ?
10. Are we going to swim this evening ?
11. Where are they going to work ?
12. Where are the men going to lodge tonight ?

B. *Put the verbs in brackets into the correct tense and voice :-*

e.g. The sun (rise) now, and the darkness (drive) away.

The sun **is rising** now, and the darkness **is being driven** away.

1. The examination papers (mark) by the teacher now.
2. She (admire) by us without her knowledge.
3. Now the old trees (cut) and new trees (plant).
4. At this moment the thief (hunt) by the policemen everywhere.
5. The house cannot (see) because it (cover) up in the flame.

6. The place (prepare) for the building of a new house now.
7. The battle (go) on now, and a lot of soldiers (kill) in the fight.
8. Now he (write) at the table, and letters (type) by the typist.
9. The house (burn) and all the things (carry) out to escape the fire.
10. Look! The people (stand) at attention and the national anthem (play).
11. The guests now (seat) themselves at the table and the food (serve) at the same time.
12. What you (think) of now? You (dream) of your friends?
13. Now the sun (set), and the earth little by little (cover) in darkness.
14. The sun (shine), and the birds (sing) and the world is bright with sunlight.
15. The moon (beam); the stars (twinkle) and the glow-worms (shine) now,

LESSON 18

The Present Simple Tense

1. จงสังเกตคํารูปของกริยาใน Tense นี้ให้ดี เพราะ The Present Simple Tense มีรูปกริยาดั้งเดิมมากกว่า Tenses อื่นๆ ทั้ง Active และ Passive และรูปของประโยคก็มีหลายลักษณะดังจะนำกล่าวเป็นข้อๆ ไป

(a) *Forms of Tense* : รูปกริยาแบบย่อๆ มี:—

Active = V (Vs or Ves)

Passive = is (am are) × Past. P.

- e.g. 1. They **speak** English here. (Act.)
English **is spoken** here. (Pass.)
2. The servant **washes** clothes. (Act.)
Clothes **are washed** by the servant. (Pass.)

(b) *Sentences* :

Affirmative : She **loves** a flower.

Negative : She **does** not (**doesn't**) love a flower.

Interrogative : **Does** (**Doesn't**) she love a flower.

Exercises

A. Put the verbs into the right form :-

Note : ถ้า Subject เป็นเอกพจน์ บุคคลที่ 3 ให้เติม "s"
 ลงหลัง Verb และเติม "es" เมื่อ Verbs ลงท้าย
 ด้วย o, s, sh, ch, x และ z แต่ถ้า Verbs ลงท้าย
 ด้วย "y" และหน้า "y" เป็นพยัญชนะให้เปลี่ยน
 "y" เป็น "ies"

e.g. 1. He (stand) at the window and (watch)
 the traffic.

He **stands** at the window and **watches**
 the traffic.

2. She (wash) her hands and (dry) them on
 a towel.

She **washes** her hands and **dries** them on
 a towel.

1. The car (belong) to my father.
2. He (live) in the house with a red roof.
3. The teacher (wish) everyone a Happy New Year.
4. The child (try) to help himself.
5. A new born baby usually (cry).
6. Who (brush) your coat for you?
7. This man (fish) in the river every-day.
8. A friend of mine often (go) to pictures.
9. Who (do) cooking in your house?
10. The lady (dress) in beautiful clothes every morning.

LESSON 17

The Present Continuous Tense

Note 1. จงสังเกตคำว่า Tense นี้ ประกอบด้วยกริยาอะไรบ้าง ทั้ง Active และ Passive และรูปประโยค (Sentences) ต่าง ๆ มีการวางระเบียบถ้อยคำเป็นอย่างไร

(a) **Forms of Tense** : รูปกริยาแบบย่อ ๆ มีดังนี้

Active = *is (am, are) × V-ing.*

Passive = *is. (am, are) × being × Past. P.*

e.g. 1. They are **reading** the books. (Active)

The books are **being read**. (Passive)

2. Some one **is singing** a song. (Active)

A song **is being** sung. (Passive)

(b) **Sentences** :

Affirmative : She **is sweeping** the floor.

Negative : She **is not (isn't) sweeping** the floor.

Interrogative : **Is (Isn't)** she **sweeping** the floor

e.g. *They must help themselves.*

He must help himself.

1. Those children can understand your words.
2. Students must know the meanings first before they can use the words.
3. They may sit wherever they like.
4. Accidents may occur at any time.
5. The men must go to the station now, or they may miss the train.
6. Those soldiers can not shoot very well and they must practise shooting everyday.
7. The guests may enjoy themselves in any ways that they are fond of.
8. They may say we can do the work.
9. There may be a lot of persons at the meeting.
10. There must be someones to help them.

D. *Make the following sentences negative :-*

Note : ในการเปลี่ยนเป็นปฏิเสธ เราเติม "do not" (don't) หรือ "does not" (doesn't) (เมื่อกริยาเป็นเอกพจน์บุรุษที่ 3) ลงหน้ากริยา ซึ่งต้องมีรูปเป็นปกติ (Infinitives) แต่ถ้ามีกริยาช่วยอยู่แล้ว ก็เพียงแค่ "not" ลงหน้ากริยาเท่านั้น

e.g. 1. The old man **knows** everything.
 The old man **does** not (**doesn't**) **know**
 anything.

2. You **must do** that again.

You **must not (mustn't) do** that again.

1. The farmer returns home at sun-set.
2. She can sing every song.
3. Some flowers grow in forests.
4. We usually keep money in drawers.
5. He wants rice and curry for his breakfast.
6. I often read a book when I lie down on bed.
7. There are some more books in the other book-case.
8. I often meet her at the corner when she goes to work.
9. That gentleman can speak French as well as Thai.
10. They play in the morning, and work in the evening.
11. There are many elephants on the north of Thailand.
12. Work and no play makes Jack a dull boy.
13. My father goes for a walk every morning.
14. We can always see what is right or wrong.
15. You must help me if I help you.

E. *Make the following sentences interrogative :-*

Note : ใน The Present Simple Tense นี้ เราใช้ "do" หรือ "does" (เอกพจน์บุรุษที่ 3) เป็นกริยาช่วย (Auxiliary) เติมลงหน้า Subjects แล้วเปลี่ยนกริยาสำคัญ (Principal Verbs) เป็นรูปปกติ แต่ถ้ามีกริยาช่วยอยู่ก่อนแล้ว ก็เพียงแค่เอากริยาช่วยไปไว้หน้า Subjects เท่านั้น เมื่อทำประโยคเป็นคำถาม

e.g. 1. She **needs** to learn cooking.

Does she **need** to learn cooking ?

2. You **can** be there at any time.

Can you be there at any time ?

1. We eat lunch at noon.
2. They are very glad to see you again.
3. He wants to live in Bangkok.
4. The boy can use some of the hard words now.
5. That girl has a very good pronunciation.
6. You must not go out so late at night.
7. They wish one another a Merry Christmas.
8. She cannot stay up late because she is still very weak.
9. It rains very heavily in Thailand.
- * 10. The child dare not say anything against me.

11. You have enough time to study English.
- *12. He need not sit up so late at night.
13. My teacher speaks slowly and clearly.
- *14. One ought to do one's duty regularly.
15. The scientists know a great deal about science.

*Need (จำเป็น), dare (กล้า), และ ought (ควรจะ)

ก็เป็นกริยาช่วยเหมือนกัน Verbs ที่มาตามกริยาช่วย

พวกนี้ของ มีรูปเป็นปกติ แต่กริยาที่มาตามหลัง

"ought" เท่านั้น ต้องมี "to" นำนำเสมอ

Note 2. กริยาที่ใช้ในความหมายซึ่งเกี่ยวข้องกับ คำสั่ง (Com-
mands), และขอร้อง (Requests) ก็มีรูปเป็น Present
Simple Tense เหมือนกัน

- e.g.
1. Somjai, close your book, please.
 2. Please lend me your pen, Somjai.
 3. Please stop talking.
 4. Class, say these words after me.
 5. Count the desks in the room.

Exercises

Read the following sentences, try to understand them
and then make them **negative**:-

Note : เราทำประโยคเหล่านี้เป็น Negative ได้โดยการเติม
"do not" (don't) ลงหน้ากริยา แต่ถ้ามีกริยาช่วย
อยู่แล้วก็เติมแต่ "not" เท่านั้น

1. Somchai, open your book, please.
2. Raria, write down your name, please.
3. Siri, bring me your book, please.
4. Arun, clean the board, please.
5. Jim, stop your talking and do your exercises, please.
6. Please read the passage, Linda.
7. Please put your pen on the desk, Lily.
8. Please go on reading, Somsri.
9. Please finish your work before going out, Charles
10. Please take your seat, Jane.
11. Mary, please answer the question.
12. Somchit, please hand me the book.
13. James, please write answer to the question. number four on the board.
14. Vilia, please tell us the answer to the question number ten.
15. Jium. please translate the sentence into Thai.
16. Give me the answer, please.
17. Lend him your pencil, please.
18. Put your book away, please.
19. Please let me see your photo.
20. Please tell your name and surname.
21. Stand on the chair, Narong.
22. Look here, Sman.
23. Get out of the class, Vichian.
24. Naret, put that book away.

25. Chinda, look at the blackboard and keep your mouth shut.
26. Class, please open your books to page 14.
27. Class, please copy these questions in your book.
28. Class, listen to me.
29. Class, stand at attention.
30. Put your hand up if you want to speak.
31. Please tell me what this means in English.
32. Please let me go out for a while.
33. Please, may I answer that question ?
34. Please, may I sit on that seat ?
35. May I talk to a friend of mine ?

Note 3. **Active and Passive** : สำหรับ The Present Simple Tense ทดถกการเปลี่ยน Active เป็น Passive มีดังนี้ คือ เขา Object ไปเป็น Subject; เดิม is (am, are) ลงหน้ากริยาสำคัญ; เปลี่ยนกริยาเป็น Past Participle (กริยาช่อง 3); เขา Subject ไปเป็นกรรมของ "by" ถ้าเป็นคำถามก็ให้เขากริยาช่วย (be) ไปไว้หน้า Subject

- e.g. 1. The cat **catches** a rat. (Act.)
 A rat **is caught** by the cat. (Pass.)
2. The hen **lays** two eggs everyday. (Act.)
 Two eggs **are laid** by the hen everyday. (Pass.)

ถ้ามี “do” หรือ “does” เป็นกริยาช่วย ให้ตัดออก แล้วเติม Verb to be ลงไปแทนตาม Subject ตัวใหม่ อย่าให้ Tense เปลี่ยนแปลง

- e.g. 1. She **does** not **like** a rude person. (Act.)
 A rude person **is** not **liked** by her. (Pass.)
 2. **Does** he **play** football? (Act.)
 Is football **played** by him? (Pass.)

ถ้ามีกริยาช่วย can, must, may, need, dare, และ ought ก็ให้ทิ้งไว้อย่างเดิม และเติม “be” ลงหลังกริยาช่วย เหล่านี้ หน้ากริยาสำคัญ

- e.g. 1. The man **can build** a house. (Act.)
 A house **can be built** by the man. (Pass.)
 2. You **need** not **do** that. (Act.)
 That **need** not **be done** by you. (Pass.)

ในการเขียนประโยคกริยามีรูปเป็น Passive Voice นั้น เรามักจะละ Subjects ที่มีความหมายทั่วไป หรือเป็นที่เข้าใจกันอยู่แล้ว ไว้ในฐานที่เข้าใจ

- e.g. 1. **They use** milk for making butter and cheese. (Act.)
 Milk **is used** for making butter and cheese. (Pass.)

2. **No one punishes** boys if they do no wrong.

(Act.)

Boys **are** not **punished** if they do no wrong.

(Pass.)

1. Some people want me to help you.
2. Do naughty boys cause accidents ?
3. They drink a lot of wine in France.
4. Can I tell him my wish ?
5. My father may build another house.
6. The people do not want him at present.
7. They always like him wherever he goes.
8. Do you still trust the man ?
9. She dare not tell a lie to me.
10. They ought to build a bridge here.
11. People speak English all over the world.
12. She does not waste her time for nothing.
13. Do they understand the lesson ?
14. They must help him if he is in trouble.
15. We call the girl Mary.
16. You may take anyone you like.
17. He does not bring the book with him.
18. She need not bring her brother along.
19. Do foolish drivers cause accidents ?
20. People make books of paper.

Mixed Exercises

Supply the correct form of the given verbs in brackets :-

- e.g. 1. The book (use) in schools.
The book is used in schools.
2. They (make) house of bamboos.
They make houses of bamboos.
1. The school (see) there.
 2. I (teach) English by my class-teacher.
 3. Who (read) the newspaper in the room?
 4. The gardener (plant) the trees in the garden.
 5. When the new road (open)?
 6. Who (cut) the tree?
 7. By whom the tree (cut)?
 8. People always (praise) him.
 9. He usually (praise) wherever he goes.
 10. Who (stay) with you now?
 11. No one (love) him because of his rudeness.
 12. He (hate) by everyone he (mix).
 13. I (give) good marks by the teacher.
 14. Good marks (give) me by the teacher.
 15. A saw (use) for sawing.
 16. The moon (go) round the world.
 17. The moon (see) at night.
 18. Whisky (drink) everywhere in the world.
 19. I (comb) my hair twice.
 20. His hair (comb) neatly everyday.

Note 4. Uses :

(a) เราใช้ The Present Simple Tense นี้ เพื่อแสดง
การกระทำที่เกิดขึ้นเสมอ ๆ เป็นนิสัย (Habit), ขรรรค
(Generally), และธรรมชาติ (Naturally).

- e.g. 1. My father **gets** up early everyday.
2. He often **tells** a lie.
3. Two and two **make** four.
4. Stars **are seen** at night.

Exercises

A. *Answer the following questions positively and negatively where possible :-*

e.g. Does he like tea ?

Yes, he likes tea.

or Yes, he does.

No, he does not like tea.

or No, he doesn't.

1. Do you often go to the cinema ?
2. Does she live in that house ?
3. Does he write to you sometimes ?
4. Does the child brush his teeth everyday ?
5. May I sit on the bench here ?
6. Can you ride on a horse ?
7. When does he begin his new job ?
8. What language does that man speak ?

9. Do they keep promises ?
10. Does he take French as a second language ?
11. Am I right ?
12. When can you finish the book ?
13. Can you wait for me here ?
14. Must I do this at once ? (No, you needn't.....)
15. Who can help you ?
16. Ought I to work hard this year ?
17. Have you any friends here ?
18. Is it a dog or a cat ?
19. Who can lend you the book ?
20. Who must remain at home ?
21. May I take this book home ?
22. Can you speak English well ?
23. Are they policemen or soldiers ?
24. Do they have lunch at school or at home ?
25. Are green mangoes sour ?

B. *Answer the following questions, using the given adverbs:-*

Note: How often ? = ¹ ^๒ ^๓ กี่ครั้งกี่วัน ?

e.g. How often do you play football ? (every evening).

I play football every evening.

1. How often do you say your prayers ? (twice a day)

2. How often does she buy her new dresses ?
(once a month).
3. How often do you wash your face ? (three
times a day).
4. How often does she feed the hens ? (twice
a day)
5. How often do you go out with your father ?
(sometimes).
6. How often does a European have breakfast ?
(once a day)
7. How often do you read English book ? (every
day).
8. How often does she go to pictures (once a week).
9. How often does your brother go for a walk ?
(always).
10. How often do you go to New York ? (never).

B. *Change the verbs and adverbs from the **Present Continuous Tense** to the **Present Simple Tense**, and make any other necessary changes:-*

e.g. She **is writing** a letter.

She often **writes** a letter.

1. They are now waiting for a bus.
2. She is now biting her fingers.
3. Siri is now playing badminton.
4. The maid is now sweeping the floor.

5. That poor child is just bringing food from the house.
6. A friend of mine is visiting his uncle.
7. They are learning French this morning.
8. The wind is blowing very hard now.
9. It is snowing very heavily this morning.
10. They are taking their baths now.

D. *Change the following verbs into the **Present Continuous Tense** and make any other necessary changes*

e.g. He often **stands** at the door.

He **is** now **standing** at the door.

1. Every day she waits for the pork to come.
2. That poor old beggar frequently passes by the way.
3. It often rains during the summer.
4. This boy often throws stone into that house.
5. Where do you usually go on Sunday?
6. Before going to bed he does his homework.
7. We generally eat lunch at school.
8. The weather gets warmer in summer.
9. They cross the bridge twice a day.
10. The lady irons clothes in the afternoon.

E. *Put the verbs given in brackets in either the Present Simple or the Present Continuous Tense:-*

e.g. 1. They (go) for a walk every morning.

They **go** for a walk every morning.

2. We now (learn) English.

We **are** now **learning** English.

1. I often (go) for a swim in the evening.

2. I not (swim) now, and (read).

3. What she (do) now ? She (iron) her clothes.

4. What he usually (do) before breakfast ? He (say) some prayers.

5. Tell me something that usually (happen) twice a day.

6. He (wear) a coat because it is cold now.

7. I often (see) her in the garden with her friend

8. The man who (walk) there is my uncle.

9. The girl (cry) because she is alone in the house

10. What you (learn) now ? I (learn) the Present Simple Tense.

LESSON 19

The Past Simple Tense

Note 1. "The Past Simple Tense" หมายถึงรูปกริยาที่แสดงการกระทำซึ่งเกิดขึ้นในอดีต หรือกริยาของ 2 ซึ่งเป็นข้อที่ทราบกันอยู่แล้ว รูปของกริยาทั้ง Active และ Passive ต้องสังเกตไม่น้อยกว่า "The Present Simple Tense" เหมือนกัน

(a) *Forms of Tense* : รูปกริยาแบบย่อ ๆ มี :-

Active = *V (past)*

Passive = *was (were) × Past. P.*

- e.g. 1. The dog **bit** the cat. (Act.)
The cat **was bitten** by the dog. (Pass.)
2. They **built** the houses. (Act.)
The houses **were built** by them. (Pass.)

(b) *Sentences* : รูปประโยคแบบต่าง ๆ

Affirmative : We **met** them.

Negative : We **did** not (**didn't**) **meet** them.

Interrogative : **Did** (**Didn't**) we **meet** them ?

Exercises

Put the verbs in the following sentences into Past Tense :-

Note : เราเติม "d" ลงหลัง **Regular Verbs** ที่ลงท้ายด้วย "e" อยู่แล้ว เมื่อทำให้ **Verbs** นั้น เป็น **Past Tense** แต่ถ้า **Verbs** ใดลงท้ายด้วย "y" และหน้า "y" เป็น พยัญชนะ ให้เปลี่ยน "y" เป็น "ied" **Verbs** บางตัวมีสระกลางอยู่ตัวเดียว และลงท้ายด้วย พยัญชนะตัวเดียว ให้เติม พยัญชนะลงไปอีกตัวหนึ่ง แล้วจึงเติม "ed"

- e.g. 1. Who **opens** the door?
Who **opened** the door?
2. She **lives** in that house.
She **lived** in that house.
3. He **dies** on the road.
He **died** on the road.

1. The girl likes sweets better than fruits.
2. The swan flies like a bird.
3. He often smokes before going to bed.
4. I hate him because he lies to me.
5. She tries her best to do her work.
6. They want tea for breakfast.

7. They use the books as readers.
8. I play football when I am free.
9. I light the lamp before dark.
10. She looks at me without a word.
11. I often pull my friend out with me.
12. The naughty child climbs the tree everyday.
13. She needs your help.
14. The burnt sugar tastes bitter.
15. They show me the way to the station.

Note 2. The Past Tense of Irregular Verbs :

กริยาต่อไปนี้เปลี่ยนรูปจาก Present เป็น Past และ
เป็น Past Participle ไม่เป็นไปตามกฎ Verbs พวกนี้
เรียกว่า Irregular Verbs นักเรียนต้องจดจำทั้งตัวสะกด
(Spelling) วิธีอ่าน (Pronunciation) และความหมาย
(Meaning) จึงจะได้ผล

<i>Present</i>	<i>Past</i>	<i>Past Participle</i>	<i>Meaning</i>
be: is, am, are	was, were	been	เป็น, อยู่
become	became	become	กลายเป็น
begin	began	begun	เริ่มต้น
break	broke	broken	แตก

<i>Present</i>	<i>Past</i>	<i>Past Participle</i>	<i>Meaning</i>
bring	brought	brought	นำมา
buy	bought	bought	ซื้อ
catch	caught	caught	จับ
choose	chose	chosen	เลือก
cost	cost	cost	มีราคา
cut	cut	cut	ตัด
do	did	done	ทำ, แต่ง
drink	drank	drunk	ดื่ม
drive	drove	driven	ขับรถ, ไต่
eat	ate	eaten	รับประทาน
fall	fell	fallen	ตก
feel	felt	felt	รู้สึก
find	found	found	หาพบ
fly	flew	flown	บิน
forget	forgot	forgotten	ลืม
freeze	froze	frozen	เย็นแข็ง
get	got	got	ได้รับ, มี
give	gave	given	ให้

<i>Persent</i>	<i>Past</i>	<i>Past Participle</i>	<i>Meaning</i>
go	went	gone	ไป
grow	grew	grown	ขึ้น, งอกงาม
have, has	had	had	มี
hang	hung	hung	แขวน
	hanged	hanged	แขวนคอ
hear	heard	heard	ได้ยิน
hold	held	held	ยึด, ถือ
keep	kept	kept	รักษา, ระวัง
know	knew	known	รู้, รูจัก
lay	laid	laid	วาง, ออกไข่
leave	left	left	ออกจาก, ทิ้ง
lend	lent	lent	ให้ยืม
let	let	let	ให้, อนุญาต
lie	lay	lain	นอน
lose	lost	lost	เสีย, หาย
make	made	made	ทำ, ผลิต
mean	meant	meant	หมายความว่า
meet	met	met	พบ

<i>Present</i>	<i>Past</i>	<i>Past Participle</i>	<i>Meaning</i>
pay	paid	paid	จ่าย
put	put	put	ได้
read	read	read	อ่าน
ride	rode	ridden	ขี่
ring	rang	rung	ด้นกระดิ่ง
rise	rose	risen	ขึ้น
run	ran	run	วิ่ง
say	said	said	พูด, ท้อง
see	saw	seen	เห็น
sell	sold	sold	ขาย
shake	shook	shaken	ด้น, เขย่า
shine	shone	shone	ส่องแสง
	shined	shined	เป็นมัน
sing	sang	sung	ร้องเพลง
sit	sat	sat	นั่ง
sleep	slept	slept	นอน
speak	spoke	spoken	พูด
spend	spent	spent	ใช้จ่าย

<i>Present</i>	<i>Past</i>	<i>Past Participle</i>	<i>Meaning</i>
stand	stood	stood	ยืน, ยืนอยู่
steal	stole	stolen	ขโมย
swim	swam	swum	ว่ายน้ำ
swing	swung	swung	แกว่งไกว
take	took	taken	รับไป, เอาไป
teach	taught	taught	สอน
tear	tore	torn	ฉีกขาด
tell	told	told	บอกเล่า
think	thought	thought	คิด
throw	threw	thrown	ขว้าง
understand	understood	understood	เข้าใจ
wake	woke	woke	ปลุก
wear	wore	worn	สวม, ใส่
win	won	won	ชนะ
Write	wrote	written	เขียน
etc.	etc.	etc.	ฯลฯ
Auxiliary	can	could	— สามารถ, อนุญาต
	may	might	— อาจ, อนุญาต

Exercises

A. *Put the verb in the following sentences into Past Tense :-*

e.g. That child **breaks** the glass.

That child **broke** the glass.

1. They know you and your father.
2. He drinks a little wine before meal.
3. She chooses a book from that book-case.
4. Who sweeps the room this morning ?
5. Who teaches you English ?
6. She hides the letter in the drawer.
7. The school-keeper rings the bell every one hour.
8. He tears up the letter and lets it fall to the ground.
9. The flower smells very pleasant.
10. The boy throws a stone into that house.
11. Who grows the flowers in the garden ?
12. The cat catches a rat in the morning.
13. The girl falls down and hurts her knees.
14. The old lady lies down for a rest.
15. We buy bread at the baker's.
16. He leaves school when he grows up.
17. She is very fond of playing with a knife.
18. They learn English when they are young.
19. My father drives his car very quickly.
20. The girl spends a lot of money on her dresses.

21. He may stay at the place for some time.
22. It may rain any time.
23. I can swim across the river.
24. They can do what they like.
25. You may sit anywhere you like.

B. *Make the following sentences negative and then interrogative :*

Note : เติม "did not" (didn't) ลงหน้ากริยา แล้วเปลี่ยนกริยานั้นเป็นรูปปกติ (Infinitive) เมื่อเป็นปฏิเสธ (Negative) และเติม "did" ลงหน้าประธาน (Subjects) เมื่อทำให้เป็นคำถาม (Interrogative) กริยาทั้งสองมีรูปเป็นปกติเหมือนกัน ถ้ามีกริยาช่วยอยู่ แล้วก็เติมแต่ "not" เท่านั้น

- e.g. 1. She **looked** at her photo on the wall.
She **did not (didn't) look** at her photo on the wall.
Did she **look** at her photo on the wall ?
2. He **could run** all the way home.
He **could not (couldn't)** run all the way home.
Could he **run** all the way home ?

1. He forgot to tell you about it.
2. I arrived home very late that night.

3. My sister sent me a New Year present.
4. The students went into the room in a hurry.
5. The teacher made them work very hard.
6. His wife listened to him when he spoke.
7. The business man made a lot of money.
8. We needed both money and food.
9. She put her baby into the cradle.
10. I showed them the way into the house.
11. The servant shut the door in the afternoon.
12. They looked and laughed at you.
13. I said good morning to my teacher.
14. She told me a lie.
15. He often sat down when he took a rest.
16. The teacher saw you when you came in.
17. He caught hold of me by the hand.
18. We could keep the matter as a secret.
19. He might have the letter yesterday.
20. The old man could remember when he was born.

C. *Change the following sentences from Active into Passive :-*

Note : ใช้ "was" หรือ "were" เป็นกริยาช่วยเติมลงหน้า
กริยาสำคัญ ดู Note 3. หน้า 153

- e.g. 1. The wind **shook** the tree. (Act.)
The tree **was shaken** by the wind. (Pass.)

2. *Did* Rarai **pluck** the flower ? (Act.)
Was the flower **plucked** by Rarai. (Pass.)
 3. *Could* she **do** the work ? (Act.)
Could the work **be done** by her ? (Pass.)

1. The doctor examined his body.
2. How could he work out the sum ?
3. When did the teacher punish him ?
4. The boy caught a fish yesterday.
5. The postman knocked at the door this morning.
6. Who opened the door for you ?
7. The watch-maker mended the watch.
8. When did he lend you the money ?
9. What did Tom eat this morning ?
10. Our army defeated the enemy.
11. She might wait for you there.
12. They could not tell him the truth.

D. Put the verbs in brackets into the **correct form**:-

Note : ระวังว่ากริยาใดควรเป็น Active หรือ Passive

- e.g. 1. The book (print) last month.
 The book **was printed** last month.
2. How you (find) out the post-office ?
 How **did** you **find** out the post-office ?
1. Our team (win) the match yesterday.
 2. The mistake (make) by the girl.
 3. These books (not read) in those days.

4. The lion (catch) in snare.
5. Potter not (murder) Dr. Robinson.
6. Who (sing) that song last night?
7. The picture book (take) from the library.
8. He often (say) of such silly things.
9. My former teacher not (teach) grammar.
10. The purse (lose) on the way.
11. He (smoke) when he was small?
12. After the storm many trees (blow) down.
13. The people (cheer) the King when he (pass) by.
14. Opium smoking (abolish) in 1958.
15. Where you (buy) the pen?

Note 6. **Uses :**

(a) เราใช้ **The Past Simple Tense** เพื่อแสดงการกระทำที่เกิดขึ้นในอดีต และยุติลงแล้วในระยะเวลาหนึ่ง ซึ่งไม่มีส่วนสัมพันธ์ใดๆ กับปัจจุบัน

- e.g. 1. He **died** when he was still very young.
 2. The letter **was posted** yesterday.
 3. He **told** me the story long ago.

(b) เราใช้ **Tense** นี้ แสดงการกระทำที่เป็นนิสัย (Past habits) หรือที่เป็นธรรมดา ขรรษาติ (Past natural actions) ได้ด้วยเหมือนกัน แต่การกระทำนั้นยุติลงแล้ว ในเวลาปัจจุบัน

- e.g. 1. He **cried** every night.
 2. She **was** very thin at the time.
 3. I **got up** early every morning.

(c) เราใช้ “**used to**” เพื่อบอกการกระทำที่เกิดขึ้น
 เป็นนิสัย หรือการกระทำอยู่บ่อยๆ ในระยะหนึ่งใน
 อดีต ก็ได้เหมือนกัน

- e.g. 1. They **used to** work very hard before.
 2. He **used** to drink coffee at night.
 3. We **did** not **use** to sleep late.

แต่อย่าจำปนกับคำว่า “**to be used to**” อดัน
 แปลว่า “เคย” เหมือนกัน แต่ตามด้วย “**ing**”-form.

- e.g. 1. I **am** not **used to** eating large meals.
 2. She **was used to** going out at night.

Exercises

A. Answer the following questions:-

- e.g. 1. Did you throw a stone into that house
 Yes, I threw a stone into that house.
 or Yes, I did.
 No, I didn't throw a stone into that house
 or No, I didn't.
2. What did you throw into that house?
 I threw a stone into that house.

1. Did you come here by bus ?
2. What did you buy from that shop ?
3. How much did you pay for the ticket ?
4. When did he arrive at home ?
5. Didn't you like the pictures ?
6. How long did she take to finish the work ?
7. What time did you leave home ?
8. Where did he find the purse ?
9. Didn't she tell you where she lived ?
10. How many times did you go to pictures ?
11. Did you teach him French at school ?
12. Where did he keep his car ?
13. How often did she phone you ?
14. When did you last see her ?
15. How did you enjoy yourself at the show ?

B. *Put questions to the following sentences :-*

Note : เวลาตั้งคำถามให้เปลี่ยนบุรุษที่ 1 เป็นบุรุษที่ 2 และ
ที่ 2 เป็นที่ 1 แต่บุรุษที่ 3 คงเดิมไม่เปลี่ยนแปลง

- e.g. 1. Yes, I finished my homework last night.
Did you finish your homework last night ?
2. No, he didn't take any pencil from your desk.
Didn't he take any pencil from my desk ?

1. Yes, I saw the film last night.
2. Yes, Tom went to school long ago.
3. No, he didn't go to the hospital last month.
4. Yes, I met Rarai just now.
5. No, we didn't see her at all yesterday.
6. Yes, Mary called on me last night.
7. Yes, I bought a bicycle last week.
8. Yes, my father sold his old car.
9. Yes, he wanted to buy a new car.
10. No, I didn't tell him any thing about you.
11. Yes, he received a letter two days ago.
12. No, she didn't leave anything behind when she went away.

LESSON 20

The Present Perfect Tense

Note 1. "The Present Perfect Tense" เป็นรูปกริยาที่ทำหน้าที่
เหมือนหนึ่งสายสัมพันธ์ของการกระทำอย่างหนึ่งซึ่งเกิดขึ้น
ในอดีต แต่ผลยังปรากฏอยู่ในปัจจุบันรูปของ Tense ทั้ง
Active และ Passive ก็ควรได้รับความสังเกตและจดจำ
จากนักเรียนเป็นอย่างดีเหมือนกัน

(a) *Forms of Tense* : รูปกริยาแบบย่อ ๆ มีดังนี้

Active = *has (have) × Past P.*

Passive = *has (have) × been × Past P.*

- e.g. 1. They *have seen* the film. (Act.)
The film *has been seen*. (Pass.)
2. She *has bought* two new dresses. (Act.)
Two new dresses *have been bought*
by her. (Pass.)

(b) *Sentences* : รูปประโยคแบบต่าง ๆ

Affirmative : You *have seen* the show.

Negative : You *have not (haven't) seen*
the show.

Interrogative : *Have (Haven't)* you seen the
show ?

Exercises

A. Put the verbs in brackets into the **correct form of the Present Perfect Tense** :-

Note : “has” ใ้กับ Singular Subjects และ “have”

ใ้กับ Plural Subjects.

e.g. The boy (go) out.

The boy **has gone** out.

1. I (ask) permission from the headmaster.
2. She (read) the newspaper.
3. Jane (find) her pen in her bedroom.
4. They (bring) the money with them.
5. We (finish) writing the book.
6. They (take) their meals.
7. He (tell) me many times about it.
8. The men (built) a bridge across the river.
9. Who (be) into that house?
10. The teacher (explain) the words to me.

B. Put the following sentences into **Passive Voice** :-

Note : ใ้ Form of Passive หน้า 177

e.g. They **have built** the school building.

The school building **has been built**.

1. The people have seen the King.
2. Someone has left a pair of spectacles behind.

3. They have found this book in a book shop.
4. The policemen have caught the murderer.
5. The people have always praised him.
6. The Ministry of Public Health has warned the people of the epidemic.
7. I have posted the letter.
8. We have studied the law of gravity.
9. The students have written down all the questions.
10. They have understood your explanation.

C. *Make the following sentences **negative** and **interrogative negative** :-*

e.g. You **have been** to the museum.

You **have** not (**haven't**) **been** to the museum.

Haven't you **been** to the museum?

1. The picture has been painted.
2. The servant has watched over my clothes.
3. She has taken the car home.
4. I have left some books at your house.
5. Your work has been done.
6. The blackboard has been cleaned.
7. They have learnt the Present Simple Tense.
8. The watch has been stolen.
9. We have seen the picture lately.
10. You have heard about it.
11. I have eaten the apples.

12. They have had their dinner.
13. You have made up your mind to work here.
14. They have brought the literature books.

D. *Put the verbs in brackets into the correct form of the Present Perfect Tense:-*

Note : เวลาทำ Exercises ให้ระวังว่ากริยาควรจะเป็น

Active หรือ Passive

e.g. 1. The baby (tear) a leaf from the book.
The baby **has torn** a leaf from the book.

2. A leaf (tear) from the book.
A leaf **has been torn** from the book.

1. The teacher just (punish) him.
2. He (punish) by the teacher.
3. The light (turn) out.
4. Who (mark) your exercise book ?
5. The pen (take) away with him ?
6. The postman (deliver) any letters ?
7. He (win) the first prize ?
8. The clock (strike) eight ?
9. The bell just (ring) by the teacher.
10. The news not yet (hear) by them ?
11. Your son (bit) by my dog.
12. He (beat) at the competition.

13. The trees (cut) down and there they lie.
14. Such animals never (see) in this country.
15. You (open) all the windows ?
16. The thief (catch) and now he is in the custody.

Note 2. **Uses :**

(a) เราใช้ **The Past Perfect Tense** เมื่อเรารู้ความประ-
 ด้กที่จะแสดงการกระทำซึ่งเกิดขึ้นในอดีต และสมบูรณ์
 แล้วในปัจจุบัน แต่ผลยังปรากฏอยู่โดยที่ไม่คำนึงถึงเวลา
 ในอดีตแต่อย่างใด มักถึงแต่เพียงคำว่า “แล้ว” เท่านั้น

- e.g. 1. *Have* you *taken* your meal ?
 2. I *have done* my homework.
 3. I *have brought* the book with me here.
 4. He *has come* back from England.

(b) เราใช้ **Tense** นี้ด้วยเหมือนกัน เพื่อแสดงการกระทำ
 ที่เกิดขึ้นในอดีต (Past actions) และการกระทำนั้นยัง
 คงดำเนินต่อมาถึงขณะนี้ด้วย

- e.g. 1. I *have lived* in Bangkok for four years.
 (= I lived here; now I am still living
 here.)

2. You **have known** him for one year.
(= You knew him; now you still know him.)
3. I **have been** a teacher here for quite a long time.
(= I was a teacher; now I am still a teacher.)

A. Answer the following questions **positively** and then **negatively** where possible :-

Note : เสด็จหน้าเราใช้ short-form answers เสด็จ
ความรวดเร็ว

- e.g. 1. Have you ever been to New York ?
Yes, I have been to New York once.
or, Yes, I have once.
No, I have never been to New York.
or, No, I have not (haven't).
2. Where have you been ?
I have been to New York.

1. Have you taken your meal ?
2. Have you ever seen a whale ?
3. Has she finished her sewing ?
4. Has the steamer arrived ?
5. When has he done that ?
6. Where have they gone ?
7. What has he had for his breakfast ?
8. What have the soldiers carried with them ?
9. Have they all entered the class ?

10. Has the lesson been taught ?
11. Who has plucked all the flowers ?
12. Has your purse been found ?
13. Where has the book been found ?
14. What have they got for dinner ?
15. Has he been to the cinema with you ?
16. Have you been ready for the examination.

B. *Answer the following questions :-*

e.g. 1. She has waited to see you since eight o'clock.

Is she still waiting ?

Yes, she is still waiting.

2. She waited to see you for a long time.

Is she still waiting ?

No, she isn't waiting any longer.

1. His father has gone out.

Is he at home now ?

3. His father went out.

Is he at home now ?

3. I lay in bed for a whole day.

Am I still in bed ?

4. I have lain in bed for a whole day.

Am I still in bed ?

5. She stood under the tree for an hour.

Is she still standing there ?

6. She has stood under the tree for an hour.
Is she still standing there ?
7. Jane has come to see you.
Is she still there ?
8. Jane came to see you.
Is she still there ?
9. He stayed at the same hotel for five days.
Is he still at the hotel ?
10. He has stayed at the same hotel for five days.
Is he still at the hotel ?

Note 3. **Since, For :**

(a) **Since** (prep & conj.) : เมื่อแปลว่า “ตั้งแต่” ใช้กับ The Present Perfect Tense โดยเฉพาะ และนำหน้าจุดของเวลา (Point of Time) ซึ่งอาจเป็นคำ (Word) หรืออนุประโยค (Clause) ก็ได้

- e.g. 1. I have arrived here **since** noon.
3. She has lived here **since** 1940.
2. He has read the book **since** he returned.

(b) **For** (prep) : เมื่อแปลว่า “ชั่วระยะเวลา” ใช้กับ Tense อะไรก็ได้ แต่ถ้าใช้กับ The Present Perfect Tense

ต้องนำหน้าระยะเวลา (Period of Time) ซึ่งอาจเป็นคำ
หรือวลีก็ได้ หมายความว่า ชั่วระยะเวลาตั้งแต่การกระทำ
เกิดขึ้นจนถึงเดี๋ยวนี้

- e.g. 1. I have been a teacher **for** two years.
2. He has lived here **for** ten months.
3. They have taken a rest **for** an hour.

Exercises

A. Supply "**since**" or "**for**" in each of the following sentences :—

- e.g. 1. He has written letters.....three hours.
He has written letters **for** three hours.
2. He has worked hard.....January.
He has worked hard **since** January.
1. They have studied English.....six years.
 2. The lesson has begun.....nine o'clock.
 3. I haven't heard of him.....a long time.
 4. I haven't heard of him.....last year.
 5. The man hasn't eaten anything.....three days.
 6. She hasn't had anything to eat.....yesterday.
 7. He has been ill.....one month.
 8. He has been ill.....last month.

9. how many nights have you been without sleep ?
10. when have you been without sleep ?

B. *Answer the following sentences :-*

e.g. 1. **Since** when have you been ill ?

I have been ill **since** last month.

2. **For** how long have you been a student here ?

I have been a student here **for** two years.

1. Since when has she been absent from school ?
2. For how long has the girl learned English ?
3. Since when have they gone away ?
4. For how long have you worked there ?
5. Since when has she stayed in that house ?
6. For how long have the men waited in the hall ?
7. Where have you been since eight o'clock ?
8. Since when has the teacher taught in this school ?
9. For how long has he known the lady ?
10. Where have you brought the pen from ?

Note 4. เราใช้ **The Present Perfect Tense** ในประโยคซึ่งมี
 Adverb : **already** (ก่อนหน้านั้นแล้ว), **just** (เมื่อครู่เอง)
yet (neg. จนถึงเวลานี้) ตามความหมายในวงเล็บ และ
ever (เคย), **never** (ไม่เคย) ก็ใช้กับ Tense นี้ด้วย

- e.g. 1. I have **already** gone there.
 2. He has **just** gone out.
 3. I have **not** done it **yet**.
 4. Have you **ever** seen a lion?
 5. No, I have **never** seen it.

Exercises

C. *Answer the following sentences :-*

e.g. Have you ever been to Chiang Mai?

Yes, I have been there once.

or Yes I have.

No, I have never been there once.

or No, I have never.

1. Have you already gone to see him?
2. Has he just arrived?
3. Haven't you finished your book yet?
4. Have you ever flied on a plane?
5. Hasn't she dressed up yet?
6. Has he studied the use of this tense already?
7. Have you ever told a lie?
8. Has your baby not yet gone to bed?
9. Has your father just returned?
10. Have you forgotten me already?

B. Put each of the verbs in brackets into either the **Present Perfect** or the **Past Simple Tense** :-

e.g. 1. He already (finish) the work you (tell) him to do yesterday.

He **has** already **finished** the work you **told** him to do yesterday.

2. I (live) in Bangkok for ten years. I still live here.

I **have lived** in Bangkok for ten years.
I still live here.

3. I (live) in Chiang Mai when I was small.

I **lived** in Chiang Mai when I was small.

1. She (be) very ill last week. She is better now.

2. She (be) very ill since last week. She is not yet well now.

3. I (shut) the door. It is still shut now.

4. I (shut) the door. It is open now.

5. He (go) out. He is still out now.

6. He (go) out. He is in the house now.

7. He not (answer) to my letter yet. I (write) to him last week.

8. You ever (be) to England? I (go) there once.

9. Mary (call) for you. She is waiting at the gate.

10. Jane (call) to see you, but you (be) not at home.
11. Who just (knock) at the door ? Please answer it.
12. Many buildings (be) built since 1942.
13. Many buildings (be) built in 1942.
14. He already (go) out. His room is locked.
15. I not (hear) of him since he left Bangkok.

LESSON 21

The Past Continuous Tense

Note 1. Tense นี้ มีรูปกริยาเหมือนกันกับ The Present Continuous Tense แต่ที่แตกต่างกันก็คือว่า กริยาช่วย "be" มีรูปเป็น Past เท่านั้น

(a) **Forms of Tense :** รูปกริยาแบบย่อ ๆ คือ

Active = *was (were) × V-ing.*

Passive = *was (were) × being × Past P.*

e.g. 1. He *was writing* a letter. (Act.)

A letter *was being written* by him. (Pass.)

2. The people *were cheering* the King. (Act.)

The King *was being cheered* by
the people. (Pass.)

(b) **Sentences :**

Affirmative : He *was sitting* alone.

Negative : He *was not (wasn't) sitting*
alone.

Interrogative : *Was (Wasn't)* he *sitting* alone ?

Exercises

A. Put the verbs in brackets into the right form :-

Note : ดู Note ต้อง Ex. ฉัน A. ใน ห้อง The Present
Continuous Tense พยายามเข้าใจความหมาย
ของทุกประโยค

- e.g. She (read) the newspaper when I came in.
She **was reading** the newspaper when I came in.
1. I went out while it (rain).
 2. They (live) in Bangkok when the war broke out.
 3. When she was alone she (cry).
 4. What you (do) when he went out ?
 5. I (listen) in at the time.
 6. The light went out while I (do) homework.
 7. You (work) all day yesterday ?
 8. Where they (learn) last year ?
 9. The fire still (burn) at three o'clock yesterday.
 10. When I entered the room she (sleep).
 11. While the bus (move) he jumped down.
 12. She killed the baby when it (cry) for milk.

B. Put the following sentences into Passive Voice :-

- e.g. She **was plucking** the flowers at the time.
The flowers **were being plucked** at the time
by her.

1. They were building the houses.
2. They were growing rice in the fields.
3. We were using this book last year.
4. A great fire was burning the house at the time.
5. The soldiers were fighting a great battle then.
6. In the afternoon she was preparing food in the kitchen.
7. At the moment she was looking for you.
8. They were printing this book last month.
9. In the year 1954 they were building the school.
10. I went to answer the door when someone was knocking at it.

C. *Make the following sentences **negative** and **interrogative** :-*

e.g. You **were sitting** at the table when I came in.
 You **were not (weren't)** sitting at the table when I came in.

Were you **sitting** at the table when I came in ?

1. The teacher was teaching when you entered the room.
2. The book was being written last year.
3. It was raining when I returned home.
4. The murderer was being hunted everywhere.
5. You were sitting for the exam. last week.
6. The wind was blowing hard when I got up.

7. He was fishing when I saw him.
8. The children were playing when it began to rain.
9. She was staying with you when he went away.
10. The car was travelling very fast when it ran over the child.
11. The trees were being cut down when I arrived at the place.
12. You were sleeping when the fire broke out.

Note 2. **Uses :**

(a) เราใช้รูปกริยาเป็น **The Past Continuous Tense** ก็เพื่อแสดงการกระทำ ซึ่งกำลังดำเนินไปในเวลาที่กล่าวถึงในอดีต โดยไม่ต้องคำนึงถึงว่าการกระทำนั้นเกิดขึ้นเมื่อไรและจะจบลงเมื่อไร นี่ก็อยู่แต่เพียงคำว่า “ในเวลานั้น การกระทำนั้นกำลังดำเนินไป”

- e.g. 1. I **was talking** with her at the time.
 2. What **were** you **doing** during the holidays?
 3. Last year he **was working** in the office.

(b) เราใช้ Tense นี้ด้วยเหมือนกัน เพื่อแสดงการกระทำ ซึ่งกำลังดำเนินไป ในเวลา^๕ที่การกระทำ^๖อย่างหนึ่ง เกิดขึ้นในอดีต โดยพิจารณา^๗ว่า การกระทำ^๘ที่จะเป็น The Past Continuous Tense นั้น กินเวลานานกว่า การกระทำ^๙อย่างหนึ่งซึ่งเป็น The Past Simple Tense

- e.g. 1. She *fell* down while she *was walking*.
 2. When I *went* out, the moon *was shining*.
 3. *Were* they *dancing* when you *left* the place ?

Exercises

A. Answer the following sentences:—

- e.g. 1. What were you doing at the time ?
 I was listening to the wireless.
 2. Were you sleeping when the fire broke out ?
 Yes, I was sleeping when the fire broke out.
 or Yes, I was.
 No, I was not sleeping when the fire broke out.
 or No, I was not (wasn't).
 1. What were you doing when the light went out ?

2. Were you enjoying yourself when you were there ?
3. Which school were you attending last year ?
4. What was he doing when the accident took place ?
5. Where was she schooling when she was young ?
6. Who(m) were you staying with when you were in Bangkok ?
7. Were they walking on the road when the accident took place ?
8. Were you talking when I was calling you ?
9. What games were the children playing in the afternoon ?
10. Which book was he reading, this one or the other ?
11. Was the boy working hard before the examination ?
12. Was the bell ringing when you arrived at school ?
13. Where were the houses being pulled down ?
14. What was being written by you last year ?
15. Who was teaching in your class this morning ?

B. *Put the verbs in brackets into the right tense :-*

e.g. Large crowds (wait) at the station when the King (arrive).

Large crowds **were waiting** at the station when the King arrived.

1. It (begin) to rain while we (play) in the yard.
2. He (fall) down when he (run) after the bus.
3. I (live) in Japan when the war (break) out.
4. When she (go) out I (sleep).
5. He (take) my watch while I (run) upstairs.
6. What you (do) when he (call) upon you?
7. I (sit) in the garden while the wind (blow) hard.
8. He (talk) with a visitor when I (leave) the place.
9. He (tell) them to listen to him because he (talk) to them.
10. While they (listen) to the wireless, the robbers (break) into the house.
11. When I (see) her she (wear) in green.
12. The bus (start) while I (get) down at the junction.
13. Where you (go) when I (meet) you yesterday?
14. It still (rain) hard when I (get) up.
15. As we (swim) in the sea, a large fish (appear) near us.



LESSON 22

The Past Perfect Tense

Note 1. Tense นมรูปกริยาเหมือนกันกับ The Present Perfect Tense ซึ่งประกอบด้วย Verb to have ตามด้วย Past Participle แต่แตกต่างกันก็คือ Verb to have ต้องเป็น "had" เท่านั้น

(a) Forms of Tense : รูปกริยาแบบย่อ ๆ คือ

Active = *had* × *Past P.*

Passive = *had* × *been* × *Past P.*

- e.g. 1. I *had seen* him before the time. (Act.)
He *had been seen* before the time
by me. (Pass.)
2. He *had done* his work. (Act.)
His work *had been done* by him. (Pass.)

(b) Sentences : รูปประโยคแบบต่าง ๆ

Affirmative : You *had gone* out before him.

Negative : You *had* not (*hadn't*) *gone* out
before him.

Interrogative : *Had* (*Hadn't*) you *gone* out
before him ?

Exercises

A. *Put the verbs in brackets into the Past Perfect Tense.*

e.g. I (see) his father when I met him.

I **had seen** his father when I met him.

1. Jane (finish) her work before the bell rang.
2. She (go) out before you arrived.
3. After he (say) the words he went away.
4. Before I left school the bell (ring).
5. He said that he (do) his work.
6. I (wait) for an hour before she returned.
7. When the boy (break) the glass he ran away.
8. The car (stop) before the people crossed the road.
9. I never (see) the sea before I went to Bangsan.
10. We (reach) the station before it began to rain.

B. *Make the following sentences negative and interrogative :-*

e.g. You **had been** there before I came here.

You **had not (hadn't) been** there before I came here.

Had you been there before I came here?

1. She had told me her name before she left.
2. He died after he had suffered so much.
3. I posted the letter after I had written it.
4. I had done nothing before I met you.

5. The policemen arrived when the robbers had left.
6. We had started when the sun rose.
7. She thanked me for what I had given her.
8. He had done his duty when he died.

C. Put the following sentences into *passive voice* :-

e.g. The painter **had painted** the house when I returned.

The house **had been painted** when I returned.

1. Someone had locked the door when I came back.
2. He could not go by train, for he had lost his ticket.
3. They had done nothing before they started.
4. I had read the book when he took it with him.
5. The cooks had prepared the food when the guests took their seats.
6. They had given up smoking opium before 1960.
7. She had found the key when I broke open the door.
8. As soon as he had heard the news he rushed out.
9. The teacher had taught all the lessons before the exam took place.
10. After he had given the last smile he left us for ever.

Note 2. Uses :

(a) เราใช้ The Past Perfect Tense เพื่อแสดงการกระทำอย่างหนึ่ง ซึ่งเสร็จสมบูรณ์แล้วก่อนเวลา (At a point of time) ที่กล่าวถึงในอดีต โดยที่คำนึงถึงแต่คำว่า “แล้ว” เท่านั้น

- e.g. 1. He **had finished** his work before noon.
 2. They **had sat** for the exam on. 17 th March.
 3. **Had** the medicine **been taken** at seven o'clock ?

(b) เราใช้ Tense นี้เหมือนกัน ในการจำแนกออกให้ผู้อื่นทราบว่า การกระทำอย่างหนึ่งเสร็จสมบูรณ์แล้วก่อนหน้าการกระทำอย่างหนึ่งในอดีต

- e.g. 1. He **had arrived** before the bell rang.
 2. She **said** that she **had seen** you before.
 3. The food **had been prepared** before it was ordered.
 4. Her body **became** cold after she **had died**.

Exercises

A. Answer the following sentences:—

e.g. Had you ever seen a lion when you were small ?

Yes, I had seen one when I was small.

or Yes, I had.

No, I had never seen any when I was small.

or No, I had never.

1. Had he returned home before the fire broke out ?
2. Did she tell you anything after she had arrived ?
3. Had they gone out when I called at your house ?
4. Had the sun set before you reached the town ?
5. Did she tell you that she had met me before ?
6. Had the rain stopped when you went out ?
7. Had he returned home before the bell rang ?
8. Did the child die after the doctor had arrived ?
9. Was the village flooded after it had rained heavily ?
10. Didn't you hear that the fire had burnt the market ?
11. Did you go to bed after I had gone last night ?
12. Had he left your room when you got up ?
13. Did you feel lonely as soon as he had gone ?
14. Had he received my letter before he left the town ?
15. Had they prepared themselves before the exam ?

B. *Put the verbs into the right tense :-*

e.g. The flower (die) before it (rain).

The flower **had died** before it rained.

1. When we (arrive) all the food (eat).
2. I (write) him many letters before I (go) to see him.
3. As soon as the Priminister (arrive) the national anthem (play).
4. She (say) that she (tell) you not to come here again.
5. She (leave) school before she (marry) him.
6. I (lie) down to rest after I (finish) my work.
7. He (be) very sorry that you not (tell) him the truth.
8. I (pay) the money before I (leave) the shop.
9. You (learn) English before you (go) to America ?
10. The lesson just (begin) when I (enter) the room.
11. The man (kill) before the policemen (arrive),
12. He (read) the book when he (go) out.

LESSON 23

The Future Simple Tense

Note 1. Tense นี้ประกอบด้วย "shall" หรือ "will" เป็นกริยาช่วยเพื่อแสดงอนาคตกาล และตามด้วย Infinitive ไม่มี "to" นักเรียนควรสังเกตรูปต่าง ๆ ของ Tense นี้ ทั้ง Active และ Passive Voice เพื่อสะดวกแก่การเข้าใจความหมายและการวางรูปกริยาให้ถูกต้อง

(a) *Forms of Tense* : รูปกริยาแบบย่อ ๆ มี :-

Active = *Will (shall) × Infinitive.*

Passive = *Will (shall) × be × Past P.*

e.g. 1. People *will save* money. (Act.)

Money *will be saved.* (Pass.)

2. We *shall do* the work. (Act.)

The work *will be done* by us. (Pass.)

(b) *Sentences* : รูปประโยคแบบต่าง ๆ

Affirmative : They *will* come.

Negative : They *will not (won't)* come.

Interrogative : *Will (Won't)* they come ?

Exercises

A. *Put the verbs in the following sentences into the future tense :-*

Note : “Will” ใ้กับบุรุษที่ 2 และ 3 “shall” ใ้กับบุรุษที่ 1.

- e.g. 1. She lives there.
She **will** live there.
2. He does not go there.
He **will** not go there.
1. He comes back soon.
2. I go to see him next week.
3. He sends her a new pen.
4. She feels better tomorrow.
5. We do not give them anything.
6. He does not know anything.
7. They do not play football any more.
8. Our examination begins next month.
9. He returns home next week.
10. The train does not stop at the station next time.

B. *Change the following sentences into passive voice :-*

- e.g. They **will** not **believe** you.
You **will** not **be believed** (by them).
1. I shall ask him the question.
2. He will tell you about it.
3. They will grow rice in June.

4. She will eat an orange everyday.
5. They will know the answer soon.
6. Who will tell you about it ?
7. No one will hurt you.
8. What will trouble you ?
9. Why will people kill him ?
10. Who will help you ?

C. *Make the following sentences negative and interrogative :-*

e.g. You **will** have a lot of money.

You **will not** (*won't*) have much money.

Will you have much money?

1. They will like this book.
2. My suit will be finished tomorrow.
3. A piece of good news will be heard next week.
4. We shall be ready for the exam, very soon.
5. The examination will be held in March.
6. She will come back in 1966.
7. You will have some hope for it.
8. He will lend you the money.
9. I shall have summer holidays during April.
10. The old houses will be pulled down soon.
11. We shall leave Bangkok for Chiang Mai soon.
12. A lot of beans will be grown in this country.
13. He will be at home till six o'clock.
14. She will be kind to everyone.

Note 2. Uses :

Pure Future : เราใช้ Tense นี้เพื่อแสดงการกระทำที่
 ตั้งว่าจะเกิดขึ้นในภายหน้า และการกระทำนั้นจะดำเนินออกมา
 มาได้ในรูป

“Shall” ใช้กับบุรุษที่ 1 ได้แก่ I หรือ We

“Will” ใช้กับบุรุษที่ 2-3 ได้แก่ you, he, she, it,
 และ they

- e.g. 1. I **shall** marry you next week.
 2. **Will** you come here again ?
 3. They **will** leave school soon.

การใช้ “Shall” กำหนดด้น้อยลงลงไปทุกวัน โดยเฉพาะในบางส่วนของโลกใช้แต่ “Will” เท่านั้นกับทุกบุรุษ “shall” ยังคงใช้อยู่ส่วนมากก็แต่ในความหมายที่ว่า “ท่านต้องการให้ข้าพเจ้า.....หรือไม่?”

- e.g. 1. When **shall** I come here ?
 (= When **do you want me** to come here ?)
 2. **Shall** we go for a walk ?
 3. **Shall** I believe you once more ?

Exercises

A. *Answer the following sentences :-*

e.g. At what time will you be back ?

I will (I'll) be back at one o'clock.

Note : รูปย่อเพียงแต่เอา " ' " (Apostrophe double "I") เดิมลงท้าย Subjects เท่านั้น

1. Where shall I put the books ?
2. Why will you go away ?
3. Who will be invited to dinner ?
4. How long will they be here ?
5. Who will help you with your work ?
6. Will you love me ?
7. Which house will you buy ?
8. Shall we work without rest ?
9. How much money will he spend a month ?
10. How many workmen will he take with him ?

B. *Supply "shall" or "will" in each of the following sentences :-*

e.g. Where we go for lunch ?

Where **shall** we go for lunch ?

1. I be very glad to see you again.
2. He leave Bangkok for London on Friday.
3. I hope you like this book.

4. I invite him to dinner this evening ?
5. They go to the station to see me off.
6. Rarai arrive in Bangkok tomorrow morning.
7. In another month I be with you again.
8. I come to see you on Sunday ?
9. she arrive before ten o'clock ?
10. We be in New York after this month.

Note 3. **Coloured Future:** ในการดำเคงออกซึ่งความหมายอันเกี่ยวกับคำนั้นสัญญา, ความตั้งใจ, ความเต็มใจ หรือ การขู่บังคับ ให้ผู้อื่นทราบได้ดังรูปกริยา:—

“**Shall**” ใ้กับ Subjects ที่เป็นบุรุษที่ 2 และ 3

“**Will**” ใ้กับ Subjects ที่เป็นบุรุษที่ 1

- e.g. 1. I **will** do the work with all my heart.
 2. We **will** fight to the last man.
 3. You **shall** be killed soon.
 4. He **shall** have the book tomorrow.

Exercises

A. Supply “**shall**” or “**will**” in order to give the sense of promise, threat, determination, or order:—

- e.g. I bring it for you when I come again.
 I **will** bring it for you when I come again.

1. You not leave the room until I come back.
2. I swear I not have him in my house any more.
3. He do as he is ordered.
4. I help you as much as I can.
5. You be killed in the near future.
6. She have everything from me.
7. I work hard for the rest of my life.
8. We do everything for our beloved country.
9. They move forward without condition.
10. I love you until I die.

B. Supply "**shall**" or "**will**" according to the sense of each sentence :-

e.g. 1. You have a new shirt next week.

You **shall** have a new shirt next week.

2. I think you like the shirt.

I think you **will** like the shirt.

1. You do as you have promised.
2. You love it when you see it.
3. I give to you when I have another one.
4. I see her when I get at the station.
5. I don't think he change his mind.

6. I am certain that he.....do as he has promised.
7. He.....tell you all about it.
8. With the notice he leave the house to-morrow.
9. They have to go on with the work without stop.
10. They always find the work easy and agreeable.

Note 4. Immediate Future : “Immediate” แปลว่า “กระชั้นชิด” ฉะนั้น “Immediate Future” จึงหมายถึงรูปกริยาที่แสดงความรู้ดีออกมา ว่าการกระทำนั้นจะเกิดขึ้นในอนาคตอันใกล้หรือเร็ว ๆ นี้ ดู Note 4. หน้า 142. “to be going to” นอกจากจะใช้แทน “shall” หรือ “will” ได้แล้ว ยังบอกความหมายของ “ความตั้งใจ” หรือ “การตกลงกันไว้แต่ก่อน” ได้อีกด้วย

- e.g. 1. I **am going to** see him tonight.
 2. **Are you going to** sell your car ?
 3. We **are going to** work hard.
 4. **Is** Rarai **going to** study in England ?

Exercises

- A. Rewrite the following sentences using "**to be going to**" in place of "**shall**" or "**will**" and notice the slight change in meaning:-

e.g. What **will** you do ?

What **are** you **going to** do ?

1. She'll write to me as soon as she arrives at the town.
2. We shall see her when we get in the town.
3. Her brother will meet us at the railway station.
4. We will pay a visit to her father on the following day.
5. I'm afraid you will be ill very soon.
6. You are a liar ; they won't listen to you any more.
7. I shall let him know about it when he comes.
8. I think it will rain tonight.
9. When will you go to pictures with me ?
10. Will the school be painted green next year ?
11. What will you tell him about me ?
12. They will study harder this year.

- B. Rewrite the following sentences using "**shall**" or "**will**" in place of "**to be going to**" and also try to understand the meaning:-

e.g. She **is going** to ask you about it tomorrow.

She **will** ask you about it tomorrow.

1. I think you are going to be sorry for it afterwards.
2. We are not going to stop you from going.
3. I suppose you are coming here on Sunday.
4. Raria is going to study medicine when she enters the University.
5. We are afraid we are not going to be able to help you.
6. You are going to know the world better when you grow up.
7. I hope he is not coming to trouble me any more.
8. What am I going to do for you ?
9. She is coming to see me for the first time next week.
10. I am going to stop him from going out at night.

C. *Answer the following sentences :-*

Note : ในการตอบคำถามที่เสนอบริการอย่างหนึ่งอย่างใด
ให้เรา มีหลักปฏิบัติดังนี้ :-

e.g. 1. Shall I cut you a piece of cake ?

Yes, please.

or No, thank you.

2. Will you have some tea ?

Yes, please.

or No, thank you.

1. Shall I help you to carry the bag ?
2. Will you have a biscuit ?
3. Shall we watch the house for you ?
4. Will you take some more bread ?
5. Shall I wait for you until you come back ?
6. Will you take this one ?

D. *Make suitable requests when you want the following:*

Note : เราใช้ "will" ในความหมายที่เป็นการขอร้อง (Request) ได้โดยการทำรูปประโยคให้เป็นคำถาม แค่อำนาจ "will" และเติม "please" ลงในประโยคดังกล่าวอย่าง

- e.g.
1. You want someone to put it on the table.
Will you put it on the table, **please** ?
 2. You want him to hold the book for you.
Will you **please** hold the book for me ?
 3. You want to go home before time.
Please, sir, **will** you allow me to go home before time ?
1. You want someone to open the door for you.
 2. You want your teacher to explain the problem to you.

3. You want a friend of yours to lend you his pen for a moment.
4. You want your father to buy you a new pen.
5. You want your teacher to correct your book before Saturday.
6. You want someone to make less noise.
7. You want someone to post your letter for you.
8. You want your mother to describe the accident she has seen.
9. You want someone to tell you the way to the station.
10. You want Rarai to carry the book for you.

LESSON 24

No Future Tense After Temporal and Conditional Conjunctions

Note 1. **Conjunctions** : คือคำที่ทำหน้าที่เชื่อมคำต่อคำ หรือประโยคต่อประโยค แต่ในที่นี้จะกล่าวเฉพาะ **Conjunctions** บางคำ ซึ่งมีส่วนสัมพันธ์กับ **The Future Simple Tense** และใช้เชื่อมประโยคเท่านั้น

e.g. *Main Clause, Conjs. Subordinate Clause.*

1. He will go away **when** you return.
2. We shall leave **as soon as** you are ready.
3. I shall be here **until** you come back.
4. She will come **before** he comes.
5. I shall stay here **while** I am in Bangkok.
6. She will love it **if** she sees it.

Note 2. (a) **Temporal Conjunctions** : “Temporal” แปลว่า “เกี่ยวกับเวลา” ฉะนั้น “Temporal Conjunctions” จึงเป็นคำที่ใช้เชื่อมประโยคเพื่อบอกเวลา หรือเรียกว่า Adverb Clauses of Time และจงจำไว้ด้วยว่าอย่าใช้ “shall” หรือ “Will” มาตามหลังคำ **Conjunctions** เหล่านี้ คือ:— when, while, before, after, till, until, as soon as, as long as.

- e.g. 1. I shall go out **when** the day breaks.
 2. He will stop working **while** he is ill.
 3. They will help you **when** they are here.
 4. Will you return **before** the sun sets?
 5. Will she see it **after** she puts on the glasses?
 6. She won't come **until** the rain stops.
 7. They will enter the class **as soon as** the bell rings.
 8. **As long as** he is in, I shall not enter the house.

(b) Uses : ความหมายและการใช้ Temporal Conjunctions
 มีดังต่อไปนี้:—

When (conj.) : แปลว่า “เมื่อหรือในระหว่างเวลาที่”

- e.g. 1. He will do it **when** he thinks fit.
 2. **When** he lives here he will join the school.

While (conj.) : แปลว่า “ในขณะที่”

- e.g. 1. They will wait for you **while** you are out.
 2. **While** she sleeps, I shall go out.

before (conj.) : แปลว่า “ก่อนเวลา”

- e.g. 1. I will finish my work **before** I go home.
 2. Will you come here **before** he comes?

after (conj.) : แปลว่า “หลังเวลา” ตรงกันข้ามกับ
“before”

e.g. 1. She will leave school **after** she passes the exam.

2. **After** he leaves, I shall go to bed.

till (conj.) : แปลว่า “จนกระทั่งถึงเวลา” = until.

e.g. 1. He will work **till** he dies.

2. I will work **till** I become rich.

until (conj.) : แปลว่า “จนกระทั่งถึงเวลา” = till

e.g. 1. The baby will cry **until** it is fed.

2. We shall sleep **until** the day breaks.

as soon as (conj.) : แปลว่า “ในทันทีทันใด” ใช้เชื่อม
ข้อความที่เกิดขึ้นอย่างกระชั้นชิด

e.g. 1. He will start **as soon as** he hears the news.

2. **As soon as** the bell rings we shall begin our lesson.

as long as (conj.) : แปลว่า “นานเท่าที่”

e.g. 1. He will work hard **as long as** he can.

2. **As long as** it rains, we can never go out.

Exercises

A. Supply a suitable temporal conjunction in each of the following, and then notice the tense :-

e.g. The moon will rise the sun sets.

The moon will rise **when** the sun sets.

1. He will wait.....you come back.
2. I shall buy it.....the price goes up.
3. He'll write to me.....he leaves New York.
4. She'll remain at home.....it rains.
5.he lives, he will help you.
6. They will sell their goods.....the prices rise.
7. I'll speak to him.....he comes here again.
8. We will begin our journey.....the sun rises.
9. You must stay here.....the New Year comes.
10.he is out I shall remain at home.
11. She will arrive.....you get everything ready.
12. I shall go up country.....I sit for the exam.

B. *Put the verbs in brackets into the correct tense:-*

Note : อย่าใช้ "shall" หรือ "will" ในประโยคที่มี

Temporal Conjunctions ดังนี้

e.g. 1. She will take it when she (see) it.

She will take it when she **sees** it.

2. I (tell) you as soon as you get home.

I **shall tell** you as soon as you get home.

1. I not (buy) it when I am not in need of it.
2. He will say so when you (speak) to him again.
3. While he not (work), he will read.
4. While I play, I not (work).
5. She will cry until she (die).

6. We (work) until we are old.
7. I (finish) it first before I return home.
8. You can do it when you (think) fit.
9. You must keep your mouth shut after you (know) it.
10. As long as you (have) a job, you will not be poor.
11. As soon as he allows me, I (go) home early.
12. While the cat (be) away the mice (play).

Note 3. Tenses in If-Clauses :

- (a) 'If-Clauses' เป็นชื่อของอนุประโยค (Subordinate Clauses) ที่มีข้อความเบื้องต้นหรือประโยคหลัก (Main Clauses) โดยมี "If" ซึ่งแปลว่า "ถ้า" หรือ "unless" ซึ่งแปลว่า "ถ้าไม่" เป็น Conjunctions เชื่อมให้สัมพันธ์กันกับ Main Clauses อย่างดีว่าถ้า If-Clauses นำหน้า ต้องมี Comma (,) ขึ้น

If-Clauses

Main Clauses.

- e.g. 1. *If* he comes, I shall see him.
 2. *If* he is coming, I shall wait for him.
 3. *If* he has come, he will be in the room.

- (b) จงจำไว้ด้วยว่า ไม่ใช้ "shall", "will", "should" หรือ "would" ใน If-Clauses ถึงแม้จะมีความหมายเป็นอนาคตก็ตาม และหลักของการใช้ Tense ทั่ว ๆ ไปมีดังนี้ :-

If-Clauses.

1. *Present Simple*
2. *Past Simple*
3. *Past Perfect*

Main Clauses.

- Future Simple.*
- Past Future.*
- Past Future Perfect.*

- e.g. 1. *If it rains, I shall not go out.*
 2. *If it rained, I should not go out.*
 3. *If it had rained, I should not have gone out.*

รูป Tense ตามแบบข้อ

1. ใช้ได้ทั้ง Present และ Future หมายความว่า เราไม่ทราบอะไรเลยเกี่ยวกับการกระทำนั้นมาแต่ก่อน แต่เรามีความรู้ดีกว่า การกระทำนั้นอาจจะเป็นไปได้
2. ใช้ได้ทั้ง Present และ Future เหมือนกัน เราใช้ Tense รูปนี้ ก็ด้วยความรู้สึกว่ามันน่าจะเป็นไปได้
3. ใช้เฉพาะเหตุการณ์ในอดีต และตรงกันข้ามกับความเป็นจริง

Exercises

A. *Answer the following sentences :-*

e.g. **If** he goes, will you go with him ?

If he goes, I shall go with him.

or Yes, I shall.

If he goes, I shall not go with him.

or No. I shall not (shan't).

1. If she is angry with you, will you be angry with her ?
2. If you are late, will you be punished ?
3. If it rains, will they play tennis ?
4. If I do not tell him, will he know about it ?
5. If she receives your letter, will she reply to it ?
6. If you get up late, will you be late for school ?
7. Will he help you if you ask him ?
8. Will you know it if I do not tell you ?
9. If it is fine, will you go out for a walk ?
10. If I speak to her, will she speak with me ?

B. *Answer the following sentences :-*

Note : ในการตอบคำถามต่อไปนี้ ก็ควรทำจิตใจให้มีความรู้ตัวว่า “การกระทำนั้นเป็นแต่เพียงนึกคิดไปเท่านั้น และไม่จำเป็นไปได้” Verb to be จะเป็น “was” หรือ “were” ก็ได้ ดูหลักการใช้ Tenses

e.g. 1. *If* you were (was) a bird, what would, you do ?

If I were (was) a bird, I should fly away.

2. *If* you met (were to meet) a mad dog on the way, would you run away ?

Yes, I would.

or No, I would not (wouldn't).

1. If you were a blind man, what would you do ?
2. If you won the first prize of lottery, where would you live ?
3. If you were to find a snake, would you kill it ?
4. If you were very rich, what would you do ?
5. If Rarai were to come late, would she be punished ?
6. If it were to rain, wouldn't you go to work ?
7. If he failed in the exam, would he leave school ?
8. If you wanted to buy a book, where would you go ?
9. If she were to kill herself, how would she do it ?
10. If you were to fail in the exam, would you be punished ?
11. If he didn't return home, where would he spend the night ?
12. If the food were bad, would you eat it ?

C. Put the verbs in brackets into the correct form:—

e.g. 1. If she (come), I (see) her.

If she **comes**, I **shall see** her. (possible)

2. If she (come), I (see) her.

If she **came**, I **should see** her. (unlikely)

1. If you (arrive) before time, you not (miss) the lesson.
2. If he (die), I not (see) him any more.
3. If it (rain) tonight, the weather (be) cool.
4. If you (be) a girl, what dress you (put on) ?
5. If the tree well (water), it (grow) well.
6. If we (be) fish, we (swim) happily in the sea.
7. If I not (agree) with her, she (be) angry ?
8. If you (be) to visit him, he (be) at home ?
9. If I (meet) him, I (tell) him about it.
10. If English (teach) properly, students (know) it soon.
11. If you (waste) your time, you (get) nothing.
12. If he (be) my son, he (love) dearly.
13. If the earth (break), no one could live on it.
14. If a bridge (build) there, the traffic (be) more easy.
15. If you not (pay) money, you can't leave now.
16. If she (be) to marry you, you (be) happy ?
17. If you (give) the job, you (do) it ?
18. If he (have) no money, he (kill) himself.

D. Answer the following sentences:-

Note : ในการตอบคำถามต่อไปนี้ นักเรียนต้องมีความรู้
 ดีกว่า ข้อความในประโยคต่อไปนี้ ตรงกันข้าม
 กับความเป็นจริง

e.g. If you had worked hard, would you have been rich ?

If I had worked hard, I should have been rich.

or Yes, I should have.

If I had worked hard, I should not have been rich.

or No, I should not (shouldn't) have.

1. If he had been healthy, would he have died ?
2. If she had known it in time. what would she have done ?
3. Who would have won if you had lost the game ?
4. If he had come, would they have seen him ?
5. Who would have been caught if the policeman had seen him ?
6. What would you have done if you had spent all the money ?
7. If he had asked you, would you have told him ?
8. Who would have helped me if I had been in trouble ?
9. Which way would she have taken if you hadn't told her ?
10. Would you have answered him if he had asked you ?

E. Supply "if" or "**unless**" in each of the following:-

e.g. 1. I shall be surprised he comes.

I shall be surprised **if** he comes.

2. He will never know you tell him.

He will never know **unless** you tell him.

1. I shall sleep here it pleases you.

2. driver doesn't stop, he will hit the tree.

3. Nobody can go with you he is allowed.

4. I should be delighted she came.

5. He will never be successful he works harder.

6. you listen to me, I shall speak further.

7. She will be late she makes haste.

8. You will not see him you return on time.

9. Your father will be very pleased he sees you back.

10. I should have gone away it had not been because of your wish.

LESSON 25

Tenses and Times

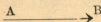
Note 1. "Tenses" หมายถึงรูปกริยา ในเวลาต่าง ๆ
"Times" หมายถึงเวลาต่าง ๆ ที่กริยานั้นเกิดขึ้น

ในการดำเ่งออกซึ่งกาลปัจจุบัน (Present Tense),
กาลอดีต (Past Tense) หรือกาลอนาคต (Future Tense).
รูปกริยาจะต้องสอดคล้องกันกับเวลาเสมอ ถ้าเวลา
เป็นปัจจุบัน (Present Time) รูปกริยาก็ต้องเป็นปัจจุบัน
ด้วย (Present Tense) ถ้าเวลาเป็นอดีต (Past Time)
รูปกริยาก็ต้องเป็นอดีตด้วย (Past Tense) และถ้าเวลา
เป็นอนาคต (Future Time) รูปกริยาก็ต้องเป็นอนาคต
ด้วย (Future Tense)

	<i>Tenses</i>	<i>Times</i>	
e.g.	1. He is teaching	now	(Present)
	2. He taught	yesterday.	(Past)
	3. He will teach	tomorrow.	(Future)

Note 2. Periods of Actions in Relation to Points of Time :

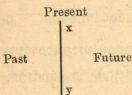
ระยะเวลาการกระทำ ซึ่งมีความสัมพันธ์กับจุดของ
เวลา มีลักษณะที่พึงสังเกตดังนี้



ให้ A เป็นจุดเริ่มต้นการกระทำ

B เป็นจุดจบการกระทำ

AB เป็นระยะเวลาการกระทำ



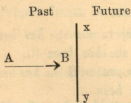
ให้ xy เป็นเส้นแทนจุดเวลาปัจจุบัน

(Point of Present Time)

ทางซ้ายของ xy เป็นอดีต (Past)

ทางขวา xy เป็นอนาคต (Future)

(1) The Past Simple Tense :



รูปนี้แสดงให้เห็นว่าการกระทำ

ทำเริ่มต้นขึ้นที่จุดเวลา A ดำเนิน

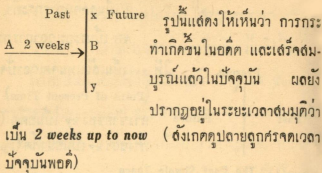
ไปในระยะเวลา AB และผ่าน

พ้นไปแล้วที่จุดเวลา B ในอดีต

โดยที่ไม่มีส่วนสัมพันธ์ใด ๆ กับ ปัจจุบัน xy เลย
(สังเกตดูปลายลูกศรจะเห็นได้ว่าหยุดอยู่ห่างจากเวลาปัจจุบัน xy) การกระทำแบบนี้ต้องเป็น The Past Simple Tense
และต้องคำนึงถึง Past Times เสมอ โดยเฉพาะคำ "Ago"

- e.g. 1. She **died yesterday**.
 2. I **left** school **long ago**.
 3. He **was** very poor **at the time**.
 4. **Did** you see him ?

(2) The Present Perfect Tense :

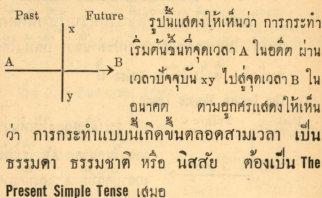


- e.g. 1. **For AB** she has been ill.
 = **For two weeks up to now** she has been ill.
 = **For two weeks** she has been ill.
 2. **From A up to the present B** she has been ill.
 = **Since A** she has been ill.
 = **Since last week** she has been ill.

บางทีเรากล่าวถึงแต่คำว่า “แล้ว” เท่านั้น ถึงแม้ว่าการกระทำนั้นเสร็จสมบูรณ์เมื่อไรก็ตามในอดีต เพราะจิตใจของเรา มุ่งอยู่ในเรื่อง ผลของ การกระทำ เป็น ส่วนใหญ่ ในลักษณะนี้ ไม่ใช่ Past Times เป็นอันขาด

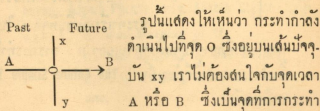
- e.g. 1. I **have done** my homework.
 2. I **have seen** an elephant.
 3. He **has bought** the book.
 4. **Have** you **taken** your meal ?

(3) The Present Simple Tense :



- e.g. 1. The sun **shines by day**.
 2. He **goes** to school **everyday**.
 3. Sugar **tastes** sweet.

(4) The Present Continuous Tense :



เกิดขึ้นและจบลง คำนี้ถึงแต่จุด O ซึ่งการกระทำ
กำลังดำเนินไป เท่านั้น

e.g. 1. *At the point O I am cooking.*

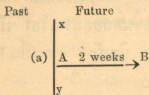
= *At present I am cooking.*

= *Now I am cooking.*

2. *You are reading at this moment.*

Verbs (กริยา) ที่เกิดขึ้นในความรู้สึกนึกคิดและ
จิตใจ ไม่สามารถแสดงการกระทำนั้นว่า ให้เห็นได้กำลัง
ดำเนินไป จึงไม่ใช่ใน Tense นี้

(5) The Future Simple Tense :



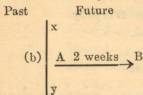
รูป (a) แสดงให้เห็นว่าระยะ

เวลาในอนาคต AB เริ่มต้นที่จุด

เวลาปัจจุบัน A และยืดยาวออก

ไปถึงจุดจบเวลา B การกระทำที่

จะเกิดขึ้นในระยะเวลานี้ ต้องเป็น



The Future Simple Tense.

รูป (b) แสดงให้เห็นว่า การ

กระทำเริ่มต้นขึ้นที่จุด A ในอนาคต

และยืดยาวไปจนถึงจุดจบเวลา B การกระทำที่เกิด

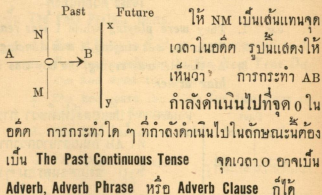
ขึ้นในระยะเวลานี้ก็ต้องเป็น

The Future Simple Tense

เหมือนกัน

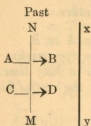
- e.g. (a) $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} 1. \text{ From A to B he will go away.} \\ = \text{ For two weeks from today he will go away.} \\ = \text{ Within two weeks he will go away.} \\ 2. \text{ Soon he will go away.} \\ 3. \text{ I shall help you in future.} \end{array} \right.$
- (b) $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} 1. \text{ He will stay here for A to B.} \\ = \text{ He will stay here for two weeks.} \\ 2. \text{ He will stay here for a long time.} \\ 3. \text{ He will love you for the rest of his life.} \end{array} \right.$

(6) The Past Continuous Tense :



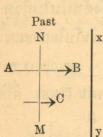
- e.g. 1. He *was sleeping* at O.
 = He *was sleeping* at one o'clock.
 = He *was sleeping* when the clock struck one.

2. I *was working* hard at the time.
3. When he came you *were taking* a bath.
4. They *were fighting* when the policeman arrived.



รูปนี้แสดงให้เห็นว่า AB และ CD เป็นระยะเวลาเท่า ๆ กัน ที่การกระทำสองอย่างคู่กันไป ในอดีต การกระทำทั้งสองนี้ต้องเป็น The Past Continuous Tense ด้วยกันทั้งคู่

- e.g. 1. They *were playing* while I *was reading*.
 2. When she *was singing*, I *was dancing*.
 3. As the girl *was crying*, the boy *was laughing* at her.

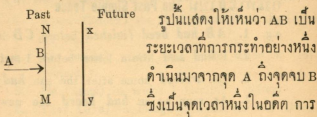


รูปนี้แสดงให้เห็นว่า การกระทำ AB กินเวลายาวกว่าการกระทำ C ซึ่งเกิดขึ้นพร้อม ๆ กันในอดีต การกระทำที่กินเวลายาวต้องเป็น The Past Con-

tinuous Tense และ การกระทำที่กินเวลาสั้นต้องเป็น The Past Simple Tense

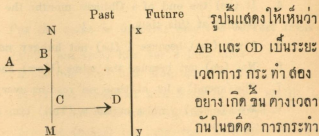
- e.g. 1. While I **was walking** there, I **saw** a snake.
 2. When he **was reading**, he **heard** a noise.
 3. He **fell** down while he **was running**.

(7) The Past Perfect Tense :



กระทำจนถึงสมบูรณ์ในอดีต การกระทำในลักษณะนี้ต้อง
 เป็น The Past Perfect Tense

- e.g. 1. **For AB up to NM** she **had read** the book.
 = **For two weeks up to the New Year Day**
 she **had read** the book.
 2. She **had worn** the dress **for two days up**
to the last Sunday.
 3. She **had been** here **before last month.**



AB ดำเนินมาถึงจุดเวลา NM ก็ถึงบูรณ์ การกระทำ CD
จึงดำเนินต่อมา ถึงจุด D ก็ยุติลงในอดีต การกระทำ AB
เกิดก่อนต้องเป็น The Past Perfect Tense และการ
กระทำ CD เป็น The Past Simple Tense

- e.g. 1. *AB had beed finished* before *CD* began.
2. I *had sent* him a letter before I *met* him.
3. He *arrived* home after the sun *had set*.
4. As soon as he *had heard* the news, he
rushed out.

Exercises

A. *Put the verbs in brackets into the correct tense :-*

1. We now (do) the exercises. -
2. The servant (go) to market every afternoon.
3. There usually (be) heavy rain in June.
4. It (be) the end of a Chinese month; the moon.
(shine) at this time.
5. I not (eat) because I (be) not hungry now.
6. Not (go) out because the wind (blow) hard.
7. She (spend) a lot of time on reading everyday.
8. Who (make) a noise outside? (Tell) him to be
quiet.

9. I wear a thick coat because it (be) cold now.
10. She (talk) with a friend who (stay) in the next house.

B. *Put the verbs in brackets into the correct tense :-*

1. A car (knock) the child down when he (cross) the road.
2. She (stand) under the shade when it (rain) yesterday.
3. He (came) in while I (write) a letter.
4. They (live) in Bangkok when the war (break) out.
5. While it (rain) heavily, the wind (blow) very hard.
6. The train (start) while I (talk) with friends.
7. The sun (rise) when I (get) up that morning.
8. The light (go) out while I (work) at the table.
9. When I (watch) them they (play) under the tree.
10. At that time I still (live) with my family.

C. *Put the verbs in brackets into the correct tense :-*

1. I not (see) him for a long time.
2. I not (see) him long ago.
3. I not (hear) of him since he (be) small.
4. He not (eat) anything for two days.
5. She (shoot) the man when he (enter) the room.

6. My father not (send) me any money for three years.
7. She (live) in England since the war.
8. It not (rain) at all last month.
9. I (live) here since I (be) born.
10. He (like) picture books when he (be) small.

D. *Put the verbs in brackets into the correct tense:-*

1. The sun (set) before I (return) home.
2. He (go) home after he (finish) his work.
3. I (tell) him that I (never see) him before.
4. When the plane (land), the passengers (get) out.
5. He (be) sure that he (meet) us before.
6. She (ask) me why I (be) absent from school.
7. I (take) the money after he (ask) me to do so.
8. After you (go), she (go) to bed last night.
9. He (be) very sorry that he (hurt) her.
10. I (work) after I (finish) schooling.

E. *Put the verbs in brackets into the correct tense:-*

1. I (go) as soon as you (be) ready.
2. Please wait until the manager (return).
3. Count one to ten before you (lose) your temper.
4. He (get) a new one before tonight.

5. In future I (believe) it when I (see) it.
6. I (eat) nothing until I (die).
7. As soon as he (have) my letter, he (reply) to it at once.
8. She (go) back when the day (break).
9. When the cat (be) away, the mice (play).
10. She (tell) you if you (ask) her.

LESSON 26

Uses of Common Prepositions

Note 1. "Prepositions" คือคำที่มานำหน้า Nouns หรือ Pronouns เพื่อแสดงความสัมพันธ์ระหว่าง Nouns หรือ Pronouns นั้นกับคำอื่น โดยเฉพาะกับ Verbs

- e.g. 1. A man is standing **at** the door.
2. There is a book **on** the table.
3. The boy is looking **for** her.
4. She is very fond **of** music.

Nouns ที่มาตาม Prepositions เรียกว่า Objects (กรรม) ของ Prepositions นั้น และ Pronouns ก็ต้องมี รูปเป็นกรรม (Object Forms) เหมือนกัน

Exercises

A. Read the following sentences and make sure that you understand them.

Note : นักเรียนควรจำความหมายของ Prepositions ในประโยคต่อไปนี้ให้ได้ เพื่อเอาไปใช้ใน Exercises ต่อไป

1. The lady is waiting **at** the station. (ที่)
2. She is sitting **in** the room now. (ใน)
3. He ran **into** the house. (เข้าไปใน)
4. The wind blew the hat **off** my head. (หลุดไปจาก)
5. We are going **to** school. (ไปยัง)
6. The soldiers came **from** the camp. (มาจาก)
7. The cat is climbing **up** the tree. (ขึ้น)
8. Tom rolled himself **down** the hill. (ลง)
9. He is leaning himself **against** the tree. (พิง)
10. I entered the house **through** the door. (ผ่าน)
11. We cross the river **over** the bridge. (เบื้องบน)
12. The steamer is sailing **under** the bridge. (ใต้)
13. She likes to sit **by** the way. (ข้าง)
14. They live **near** the school. (ใกล้)
15. The nose is **between** the two eyes. (ระหว่าง)
16. He made a speech **among** the people. (ในหมู่)
17. We walk to school **along** the road. (ไปตาม)
18. Be careful when you walk **across** the road. (ข้าม)
19. The moon goes **round** the earth. (โคจรรอบ)
20. She always sit **beside** her mother. (อยู่ข้างๆ)
21. There is a fruit garden **behind** the house.
(อยู่ข้างหลัง)
22. Money is kept **inside** a safe. (ภายใน)
23. The watchman is standing **outside** the gate.
(ภายนอก)
24. The house is **beneath** its roof. (ภายใต้)
25. The moon is **above** the mountains. (เหนือระดับ)
26. The sun is sinking **below** the horizon. (ใต้ระดับ)
27. There is a lake **beyond** the mountain. (เหนือไป)

B. *Supply a suitable preposition in each of the following sentences :-*

e.g. The stone went right.....the window.

The stone went right **through** the window.

1. The map was hangingthe wall.
2. The lady opened the door and went.....the room.
3. A snake was crawling the tree.
4. That dog ran.....the bridge.....the stream.
5. A plane was flying high my head.
6. The child often sits.....his father and mother.
7. We sometimes have a pleasure trip the river.
8. Who is standing the door ?
9. The sun is sinking the horizon.
10. At some places the lands arethe sea level.
11. No one can tell what is.....the sea.
12. What is the cave the side the hill ?
13. It is dangerous to runthe road.
14. Fish swim water and breathe their gills.
15. You comeschool early. Is your house the school ?
16. On the way a man was walking me.

17. I saw the stranger walking up and down.....
the corner.
18. He looked like a ruin the ruins.
19. He was the first man to fly the world.
20. Don't sit a fire in hot weather.

Note 2. **Pairs of Prepositions that are Easily Confused**

Prepositions บางคู่มีความหมายใกล้เคียงกัน และมักจะก่อให้เกิดความสับสนขึ้นได้เสมอในเวลาใช้ เพราะไม่มีหลักเกณฑ์ที่แน่นอนใด ๆ เกี่ยวกับการใช้ ฉะนั้นนักเรียนควรสังเกตดูจากหนังสืออ่านเสมอ ๆ ว่า **Prepositions** อะไร มี **Nouns** ลักษณะใดมาตาม

(1) **At, In :**

At : ใช้นำหน้า **Nouns** ที่เป็นจุดของเวลาและสถานที่ แปลว่า “ณ เวลาหรือ ณ สถานที่”

- e.g.
1. I arrived home **at** five o'clock.
 2. He usually gets up **at** dawn.
 3. I am **at** home on Sunday.
 4. I met him **at** the corner.

In : ใช้นำหน้า Nouns ที่เป็นชื่อของระยะเวลา หมายถึง
 ส่วนใหญ่ ๆ ของวัน เดือน ปี ฤดูกาล และ Nouns
 ที่เป็นชื่อของสถานที่ ๆ มีบริเวณหรือสถานที่ใหญ่ ๆ
 แปลว่า “ในตอนต้นเวลา” หรือ “ในสถานที่”

- e.g. 1. He came here **in** the morning.
 2. We sit for the exam. **in** March.
 3. Flowers appear **in** Spring.
 4. The war broke out **in** 1940.
 5. I arrived **in** Bangkok on Friday.
 6. There is a glass **in** the box.

(2) **Beside, Besides :**

Beside : แปลว่า “อยู่ข้าง ๆ” บุคคลหรือสิ่งของ

- e.g. 1. My house is **beside** the river.
 2. He stood **beside** his brother.

Besides : แปลว่า “นอกจากนั้น” ใช้ได้ทั้งบุคคล และสิ่ง
 ของ

- e.g. 1. There are some others **besides** me.
 2. **Besides** eggs we have good meat.

(3) **By, With :**

By : แปลว่า “โดย” พาหนะหรือบุคคล

- e.g. 1. We made a journey **by** train.
 2. You can send the letter **by** the man.

With : แปลว่า “กับ, ด้วย, มี” ใช้กับ Nouns ที่เป็น
เครื่องมือ

- e.g. 1. He goes to school **with** me.
2. He cut the tree **with** an axe.
3. She is a girl **with** blue eyes.

(4) **Between, Among :**

Between : แปลว่า “ระหว่าง” บุคคลสองคนหรือสิ่งสองสิ่ง

e.g. 1. The child is sitting **between** his father and mother.
2. He put his tongue **between** his teeth.

Among : แปลว่า “ในหมู่” บุคคลหรือสิ่งของตั้งแต่สามขึ้นไป

- e.g. 1. **Among** the three girls she is the best.
2. The house stood **among** the trees.

(5) **In, Within :**

In : แปลว่า “ตอนต้นระยะเวลา”

- e.g. 1. I shall return **in** a year's time.
2. The work can be done **in** a day.

Within : แปลว่า “ภายในระยะเวลาหรือขอบเขต”

- e.g. 1. You can finish this book **within** a year.
2. You must be **within** bound.

(6) In, Into :

In : หมายถึงบุคคลหรือสิ่งของอยู่กับที่

- e.g. 1. I was sitting **in** the room.
2. She was bathing **in** the bathroom.

Into : แปลว่า “เข้าไปข้างใน” ใช้ตามกริยาเคลื่อนที่

- e.g. 1. He ran **into** the house.
2. A snake crawled **into** the hole.

(7) To, Till (Until) :

To : แปลว่า “จนกระทั่ง” เวลาหรือสถานที่ ถ้าใช้กับ
เวลาต้องคู่ไปกับ Prep. “from” นำหน้าจุดเวลา
หรือสถานที่

- e.g. 1. He can work **from** morning **to** evening.
2. I slept **from** six **to** seven o'clock only.
3. Count one **to** ten.

Till : แปลว่า “จนกระทั่งถึงเวลา” ใช้กับเวลาเท่านั้น

- e.g. 1. He works **from** morning **till** night.
2. I sleep **until** late everyday.

(8) From, Since :

From : แปลว่า “จาก” สถานที่หรือเวลา

- e.g. 1. He travelled **from** England to America.
2. I can wait here **from** six to seven only.

Since : แปลว่า “ตั้งแต่” จุดเวลา ใช้กับเวลานั้น

- e.g. 1. He has been sitting **since** morning.
2. I have lived here **since** 1952.

(9) **During, from :**

During : แปลว่า “ในระหว่างเวลา” หมายถึงการกระทำ
ที่กินเวลานั้นยาวกว่าระยะเวลาที่กล่าวถึง

- e.g. 1. What were you doing **during** the holidays?
2. It rained **during** the night.

For : แปลว่า “ชั่วระยะเวลา” หมายถึงตลอดระยะเวลา

- e.g. 1. I shall stay with him **for** a night.
2. She can speak **for** four hours.

(10) **Over, Above :**

Over : แปลว่า “เหนือศีรษะ” ในระดับตั้ง

- e.g. 1. The plane flew **over** the head.
2. She spread a mat **over** the floor.

Above : แปลว่า “เหนือระดับ”

- e.g. 1. The hill is **above** the sea-level.
2. A plane usually flies **above** the clouds.

Exercises

A. *Supply a suitable preposition in each of the following sentences :-*

e.g. We shall have an interval the end of the lesson.

We shall have an interval **at** the end of the lesson.

1. He often gets up midnight.
2. There isn't any fish the river.
3. There is a mango tree house.
4. She has two houses a piece of land.
5. We go to school bus.
6. The thief was killed a sword.
7. A river runs its banks.
8. The house is situated the hills.
9. You can finish the book three days.
10. They can arrive school one hour.
11. The heart is the chest a man.
12. When it rained, I ran the building.
13. Walk the end of the road and you will find the house.
14. I wrote this book dawn.
15. Where do you come ?
16. He has come to Bangkok 1956.
17. The great fire broke out the day.

18. I have been ill a week.
19. A bridge has been built the place
the river.
20. The sky is our heads.

B. *Supply a suitable preposible in each of the following sentences :-*

1. Stars are seen the sky night.
2. I can do the work four days this month.
3. We arrived the port England
six o'clock.
4. the trees there was a fine building
the small houses the lake.
5.only a bag in his hand he travelled.....
America plane.
6. Caesar was stabbed a sword Brutus.
7. Life goes on happiness and sadness
various troubles.
8. The flower may be in bloom two days
..... this week.
9. He usually gets up early the morning to
go the garden.
10. We made a journey the place sunset.
11. They have travelled Thailand Ger-
many Friday.

12. I shall go.....a change.....the seaside.....
one week.....the summer holidays.
13. The moon is rising the horizonthe
mountains.
14. I have breakfast the morning seven
o'clock and lunch noon.
15. The machine was made..... Germany
Kadus Co.

Note : 3. **Compound Prepositions** : หมู่ของคำบุคที่ประกอบ
ด้วย Prepositions และ Nouns รวมกันเป็นวลี (Phrases)
ทำหน้าที่อย่าง Prepositions ทั้งหลาย คือนำหน้า Nouns
หรือ Pronouns ซึ่งเป็นกรรม ในการใช้ Compound
Prepositions นั้น ขอให้นักเรียนคิดเสียว่าเป็นอย่างเดียวก
ันกับ Simple Prepositions นั้นเอง แต่นักเรียนจะ
ต้องจดจำเป็นหมู่ๆ ไปพร้อมทั้งความหมายด้วย

Exercises

A. Answer the following sentences and also take note
of the **compound prepositions** :-

e.g. Who will go **instead of** me ? (แทน)
I will go **instead of** you.

1. Who is working **in place of** the headmaster ?
(แทนที่)

2. Whose house is **at the end of** the road ?
(ปลายสุด)
3. What did you arrive at **in the end of** the day ?
(ในที่สุด)
4. When did they come **to the end of** the journey ?
(สิ้นสุด)
5. Can you jump **from the end of** the span ?
(จากปลายสุด)
6. Can a man sit **on the end of** a pole ?
(ยอดสุด)
7. Where were you **at the beginning of** the lesson ?
(ตอนต้น)
8. What is there **in front of** your house ?
(ข้างหน้า)
9. What are they going to build **on the top of** the mountain ?
(บนยอด)
10. When do you like to sit **by the side of** a fire ?
(ข้าง ๆ)
11. Why does he give up his study **in the middle of** it ?
(กลาง ๆ)
12. Does he come **from the other side of** the river ?
(ฝั่งตรงข้าม)
13. Who is **at the top of** the class ? (ที่หนึ่ง)
14. What did the people do **in praise of** the King ?
(สรรเสริญ)
15. Whom did you meet **on the way to** school ?
(ระหว่างทาง)

16. What are you **in search of** ? (หา)
17. Who is talking **at the back of** the class ? (ด้านหลัง)
18. Who ran **out of** the class ? (ออก)
19. What will you do **for the sake of** her ? (เพื่อเห็นแก่)
20. Will you be punished **because of** your failure ? (เนื่องจาก)

B. *Supply a suitable Compound preposition in each of the following sentences :-*

Note : In spite of = ถึงแม้ว่า, Owin to = เนื่องจาก
 because of = เป็นเพราะว่า,
 according to = เป็นไปตาม
 for the love of = ด้วยใจสมัคร,
 in love with = หลงรัก

1. I know your brother is the girl.
2. her beauty she is admired by all.
3. I remain a teacher teaching.
4. He is quite happy poverty.
5. the flood the people had nothing to eat.
6. You must do your father's advice.

Note 4. **To and For** : ในความหมายที่แปลว่า “แก่” และ “เพื่อ” ใช้นำ Indirect Objects (บุคคล) ได้ โดยที่ความหมายไม่เปลี่ยนแปลง

- e.g. 1. I gave him the money,
 = I gave the money **to** him.
 2. She sent me a letter.
 = She sent a letter **to** me.
 3. He bought her a present.
 = He bought a present **for** her.
 4. Please bring me some books.
 = Please bring some books **for** me.

Exercises

- A. *Rewrite the following sentences using "to" or "for"*
 = *without changing the meaning:-*

e.g. He will lend you some money.

He will lend some money **to** you.

1. She will give me a book.
2. The teacher bought his students presents.
3. He said he would write me a letter soon.
4. I shall send her a birthday present.
5. Take this glass away and bring me another one.
6. He still owes me ten thousand ticals.
7. I shall offer her a help if she needs it.
8. Pass me the bread, please.
9. I shall pay you the money soon.
10. Will you sell me the new car ?
11. She showed all her friends the pictures.

12. Can't you tell me the truth about it ?
13. Are you going to teach me the class ?
14. I didn't promise you anything.
15. Who will make you a new dress ?

B. *Rewrite the following sentences so as to get rid of "to" or "for" without changing the meaning :-*

e.g. I shall deny nothing **to** her.

I shall deny **her** nothing.

1. Has he paid the money to you ?
2. When will you lend the money to me ?
3. Will you please read the letter to me ?
4. The old man told the story to us yesterday.
5. We wished "Happy New Year" to the teacher.
6. I shall order your favourite dish for you.
7. He handed a sword as a reward to me.
8. When can you get a copy of the book for her ?
9. He told me he would buy something for you.
10. I shall show the pictures to you.

Note 5. **Prepositions at the End of the Sentence :**

ควรทั้ง **Prepositions** ไว้ท้ายประโยคคำถาม ซึ่งนำ
ด้วย **Interrogative Pronouns** ที่เป็น **Objects** ของ **Prepo-**
sitions นั้น โดยเฉพาะในภาษาพูด

Exercises

Supply a suitable preposition given below in each of the following sentences :-

about, with, on, at, of, in, for, out of, from.

e.g. What are you thinking ?

What are you thinking ***about*** ?

1. Whom was she dancing ?
2. What are you talking ?
3. Whose seat am I sitting ?
4. Who is she talking ?
5. Who(m) will you give this present ?
6. Who(m) are you writing ?
7. What street do you live ?
8. What do you write ?
9. Who(m) are you laughing ?
10. Whose book are they looking ?
11. What shall I talk ?
12. What did he take the money ?
13. Which chair did you sit ?
14. Who(m) are you doing this ?
15. What are they waiting ?

Note 6. The "ing"-Form after Prepositions :

นักเรียนควรจำไว้ด้วยว่า Prepositions ส่วนมากหรือ
แทบทั้งหมด ต้องการ Verbs ลงท้ายด้วย "ing" (Gerund)
มาตามหลัง Prepositions นั้น

- e.g. 1. I thank you **for coming**.
 2. She is very fond **of singing**.
 3. Who can work **without stopping**.
 4. A child prefers playing **to working**.
 5. I have no idea **of writing**.

Exercises

Put the verbs in brackets into the right tense:-

e.g. I shall be waiting for your (come).

I shall be waiting for your **coming**.

1. I am thinking of (write) to him.
2. She is angry with me for (open) her letter.
3. Don't spend too much time in (think)
4. We are talking about (go) to America.
6. I prefer reading to (write).
7. you will be punished for (be) late.
8. She is not used to (work) hard.
9. He is dreaming of (have) a fine house.
10. I don't like taking any part in (do) that.



LESSON 27

Relative Pronouns

Note 1. “Relative” แปลว่า “เกี่ยวข้อง” ฉะนั้น “Relative Pronouns” จึงใช้เป็นข้อของคำที่ทำหน้าที่แทน Nouns และเชื่อมประโยคให้ประสานกันได้ด้วย

- e.g. 1. I know *the man*. *The man* wrote this book.
I know the *man who* wrote this book.
2. He found the *key*. *It* was in the drawer.
He found the *key which* was in the drawer.
3. The man is her *father*. You saw *him*.
The *man whom* you saw is her father.
4. This is the *house*. Jack built *it*.
This is the *house that* Jack built.

จากตัวอย่างข้างบนจะเห็นได้ว่า คำ *who, which, whom*, และ *that* ทำหน้าที่แทน *man, key, father*, และ *house* ซึ่งมาข้างหน้า (Antecedent) และเชื่อมประโยคให้ประสานกัน จึงเรียกว่า “Relative Pronouns”

Note 2. Uses of Relative Pronouns :

(a) **who** : แปลว่า “ผู้ซึ่ง” ใช้แทนบุคคลเมื่อเป็น Subject.

- e.g. 1. I love him **who** loves me.
 2. This is the girl **who** won the prize.
 3. The woman **who** is sitting there is my aunt.
 4. The child **who** is playing there is a boy.

(b) **Whom** : แปลว่า “ผู้ซึ่ง” เหมือนกัน ใช้แทนบุคคลเมื่อเป็น Objects ของ Verbs หรือของ Prepositions

- e.g. 1. I met the boy **whom** you want.
 2. Those **whom** God loves die young.
 3. That is the teacher with **whom** I am staying.
 4. The lady of **whom** you were speaking is there.

(c) **Which** : แปลว่า “ซึ่ง” ใช้แทนสัตว์และสิ่งของเป็นได้ทั้ง Object และ Subject

- e.g. 1. I have a radio **which** is old and useless.
 2. That is the flower **which** has sweet smell.
 3. It is the book **which** I brought for you.
 4. That is the house in **which** I live.

(d) **That** : แปลว่า “บุคคล/สิ่งที” ใช้แทนได้ทั้งบุคคล สิ่ง
และสิ่งของ เป็นได้ทั้ง **Subject** และ **Object**.

- e.g. 1. Solomon was a king **that** was very rich.
2. He was a person **that** is loved by all.
3. It is the house **that** she lives in.
4. I saw the stranger **that** you had met.

(e) **What** : แปลว่า “สิ่งซึ่ง” ใช้แทนสิ่งของ ทั้ง **Subject**
และ **Object** แต่ไม่มี **Pro(Noun) Antecedent** มา
ข้างหน้า

- e.g. 1. I know **what** you want.
2. Tell me **what** makes you unhappy.
3. He is very fond of **what** you have.

Exercises

A. Supply a suitable relative pronoun in each of the following sentences:-

- e.g. 1. The lady.....was here has gone to London.

The lady **who** was here has gone to London.

2. I don't understand.....you mean.

I don't understand **what** you mean.

3. He isn't a man in.....you can believe.

He isn't a man in **whom** you can believe.

1. The stranger.....you met has gone into the house.
2. She heard.....I said.
3. The book.....you lent me is very interesting.
4. There is no one here.....does not love you.
5. I cannot sit on the chair.....is broken.
6. The letter.....we received on Friday had no stamp on it.
7. The woman about.....we are talking is in the next room.
8. The man of.....you were talking is a teacher.
9. The tree.....stands near the gate has lovely flowers.
10. The meat.....we had for lunch was very bad.
11. A man.....listens to you is a fool.
12. The people with.....I live are very kind.
13. The girl.....works in the office is my sister.
14. The newspaper.....was there was no good at all.
15. The mistake.....he made was a big one.

B. *Join each of the following pairs of sentences, using a relative pronoun;*

e.g. 1. The *flowers* have died. I planted the *flowers*.

The *flowers which* I planted have died.

2. The *man* is the teacher. You see *him* at the desk.

The *man whom* you see at the desk is the teacher.

1. The *fish* was not good. I ate *it* yesterday.
2. I asked for a *book*. *It* was very interesting.
3. She is a fine *woman*. I have seen *her* once.
4. He fell down the *tree*. *It* was already very old.
5. The *murderer* ran away. The policeman followed *him*.
6. The *lion* was shot by the hunter. *It* lay dying.
7. The *policeman* saw the accident. *He* watched the road.
8. The *city* was destroyed by the fire. *It* was burnt at night.
9. We cannot trust a *man*. No one trusts *him*.
10. This is the *room*. *It* is mine.
11. A *priest* told us the way home. *He* met us.
12. George was a *king*. *He* was famous for music.
13. The *bridge* was made of iron. They built *it*.
14. They found a gold *coin*. *It* had been buried.
15. The *captain* was not at home. They went to see *him*.

C. Join each pair of the following sentences:—

Note : ถ้า **Relative Pronouns** เป็นกรรมของ **Prepositions**

เวลาเชื่อมประโยค ต้องเอา **Prepositions** นั้น

ไปไว้หน้าด้วย นอกจาก “that” จึงจะทิ้ง (ท้าย)

Prepositions ไว้ตามเดิม

e.g. 1. That is the **house**. I live **in the house**.

That is the **house in which** I live.

2. That is the **house**. I live **in the house**.

That is the **house that** I live **in**.

1. This is the very **room**. I first met my wife **in it**.

2. The **river** ran fast and deep. Pat was drowned **in it**.

3. The **man** was a thief. The woman was talking about **him**.

4. The **bird** is very beautiful. I am looking at **it**.

5. The **tree** is very old. I am sitting under it.

6. Who is the **man**? You are speaking to **him**.

7. The **room** was empty. He went into **it**.

8. That is the **book-case**. I took the book out of **it**.

9. The **woman** sent me a smile. I spoke to **her**.

10. I asked him the **question**. He could not answer to **it**.

11. That is the **key**. I am looking for **it**.

12. She gave me **everything**. I asked for **it**.

13. The **girl** was not at home. They went to look for **her**.
14. It is the new **desk**. He is working at **it**.
15. She has a **trick**. **It** reminds me of her mother.

D. Choose the correct form:-

Note : **Relative Pronouns** ต้องเป็นเพศ พจน์ และ บุรุษ
 เดียวกันกับ Nouns หรือ Pronouns ที่หมายถึง

e.g. The meat which (was were) bought was bad.
 The meat which **was** bought was bad.

1. The pen which (is are) lost is a very good one.
2. The flowers which (was were) given to me are very beautiful.
3. The girls who (is are) sitting there are my friends.
4. I who (am are) your teacher am ready to help you.
5. The tree which (stands stand) by the gate has sweet fruits.
6. The road which (leads lead) to the station is very long.
7. The noises which (was were) heard were not human.
8. The man who (has have) a red car is a soldier.
9. The boy who often (throws throw) stones is very naughty.
10. The letters which (was were) received (were was) from my friends.

Note 3 **Whose** : เป็นรูปที่แสดงการเป็นเจ้าของ (Possessive Form) ของ "who" ใช้แทนได้ทั้งบุคคลและสิ่งของ

- e.g. 1. It is a tree **whose** leaves are ever green.
 2. He is a man **whose** life is very peaceful.
 3. She is a person **whose** body is healthy.

Exercises

Join each pair of the following sentences, using "**whose**"

e.g. That is the **lady**. **Her** house was burnt.
 That is the **lady whose** house was burnt.

1. There goes the boy. His father is looking for him.
2. I met an old man. His house had been robbed.
3. He has a flower. Its smell is like that of a lady.
4. They live in the house. Its roof is leaking.
5. It is a tree. Its fruits are poisonous.
6. The woman is still very sad. Her child has just died.

7. The doctor becomes very famous. His work is very successfull.
8. Rarai will be coming alone. Her husband has gone up country.
9. The lion hunts at night. Its roar is very fearful.
10. The girl won the competition. Her smile is very sweet.
11. The shephard shouted for help. His lambs were eaten by the wolves.
12. They saw the captain. His ship had been sunk.

LESSON 28

Relative Adverbs

Note 1. **Relative Adverbs:** เป็นคำที่ทำหน้าที่ขยาย Verbs และ
เชื่อมประโยคเพื่อบอกเวลา (Time), สถานที่ (Place),
เหตุผล (Reason), และอาการ (Manner). จึงตั้งเกิดดู
ประโยคต่อไปนี้

- e.g. 1. He saw you. You arrived **at the time**.
He saw you **when** you arrived. (เวลา)
2. I met him. He lived **at the place**.
I met him **where** he lived. (สถานที่)
3. She gave the reasons. She did it
with the reason.
She gave the reasons **why** she did it.
(เหตุผล)
4. There is only one way. I could do
the sum **by the way**.
There is only one way **how** I could
do the sum. (อาการ)

Note 2. **Uses of Relative Adverbs:**

(a) **When:** แปลว่า “เมื่อ” ใช้เชื่อมประโยคเพื่อบอกเวลา

- e.g. 1. I stayed in Bangkok **when** I was a boy.
 2. He died **when** he was very old.
 3. **When** you work, I shall help you.

(b) **Where** : แปลว่า “ที่ซึ่ง” ใช้เชื่อมประโยคเพื่อบอกสถานที่

- e.g. 1. He died **where** he lived.
 2. She sat **where** I stood.
 3. **Where** you go, I shall follow.

(c) **Why** : แปลว่า “ด้วยเหตุผลการ” ใช้เชื่อมประโยคที่เป็นเหตุผล

- e.g. 1. I know the reason **why** he left the place.
 2. I wonder **why** you are late.
 3. That is **why** you cannot do it.

(d) **How** : แปลว่า “โดยวิธีที่” ใช้เชื่อมประโยคในความหมายที่เกี่ยวข้องกับวิธีการ

- e.g. 1. That is **how** you can learn English.
 2. Please tell me **how** you do the sum.
 3. I shall tell you the way **how** she cooks.

 Exercises

A. Rewrite the following sentences using "*where*" or "*when*" or "*why*":

Note. "*when*" or "*where*" or "*why*" = *Prep* × *Rel. Pron.*

e.g. 1. That is the village *in which* I was born.

That is the village *where* I was born.

2. That was the day *on which* I joined this school.

That was the day *when* I joined this school.

3. The reason *for which* he punished you is this.

The reason *why* he punished you is this.

1. This is the room in which I first met my wife.
2. December is the month in which the weather is very cold.
3. Is that the reason for which you could not come ?
4. I can never forget the days on which we were young.
5. This is the place at which he was knocked down
6. Can you tell me the reason for which you left the house ?
7. It was the moment at which I was proudest.
8. The reason for which I love you is this.
9. Do not remember the year in which it was very cold ?
10. Show me the place at which you lost your pen.

B. Supply "**when**" or "**where**" or "**why**" or "**how**" in each of the following sentences.

e.g. 1.he was killed is still not known.

Why he was killed is still not known.

2. I don't see.....you can run away from her.

I don't see **how** you can run away from her.

1.I was young I thought so.
2. He hid his money nobody could find.
3. Your father should know.....you are getting on.
4. I wonder she looks very pale.
5. She died she was born.
6. He didn't tell he had done that.
7. She asked me I liked it.
8. I shall do it I think fit.
9. We wonder the thief got into the house.
10. This is the place the child was murdered.
11. I wish to know you go out every night.
12. Seeds will grow they fall.

C. Join the following sentences using "**when**" or "**where**" or "**why**" or "**how**":

e.g. He died **in the house**. He was born **there**.

He died in the house **where** he was born.

1. I don't know **the time**. I shall return **at the time**.

2. He asked me *the reason*. *For the reason* I came late.
3. I sprang up. *At the moment* I heard the signal.
4. He doesn't know *the way*. I did the sum *by that way*.
5. What is *the day*? You sit for the exam *on the day*.
6. *The reason* is this. He gave up his schooling *for the reason*.
7. This is *the place*. I am living *here*.
8. We are talking about Bangkok *in the year*. It was flooded *in that year*.
9. He knows *the method*. English can be easily taught *by the method*.
10. It was already *ten o'clock*. I went to bed *at the time*.

D. Answer the following sentences, using *relative clauses* :-

- e.g. 1. When did you arrive here?
I arrived here when it was already dark.
2. Why don't you speak with him?
I don't speak with him because he is bad.
3. Where does she live?
She lives where you met her.
4. How do you write the letter?
I write the letter as the teacher does.

1. Why were you absent yesterday ?
2. When did you see him ?
3. Where do you often meet him ?
4. When does the lesson begin.
5. Where can you hunt tigers ?
6. Why do you study English ?
7. How did he speak English ?
8. When do they return home ?
9. Where did you meet him ?
10. How did he behave himself ?
11. Why do you want to see her ?
12. How do you work ?
13. Why must we eat ?
14. When did you get up ?
15. Where do fish live ?

LESSON 29

Interrogative Links

Note 1. “Interrogative” แปลว่า “เกี่ยวกับคำถาม” และ
“Link” แปลว่า “เครื่องเชื่อม” ฉะนั้น “Interrogative Link” จึงหมายความว่า “เครื่องเชื่อมที่ความ
หมายเป็นคำถามไปในตัว” ถึงแม้ว่ารูปประโยค
จะเป็นบอกเล่าก็ตาม

- e.g. 1. (I wonder **about it. Why** did he come late?)
I wonder **why** he came late.
2. (I asked him. **Where** did you live?)
I asked him **where** you lived.
3. (Please say it. **What** do you want?)
Please say **what** you want.
4. (He told me. **Who** was he?)
He told me **who** he was.

จากตัวอย่างข้างบนนี้ จึงได้เกิดคำแห่งกริยา
และรูปประโยค เมื่อใช้ Interrogative Links เชื่อม
ซึ่งมีรูปมาจาก Interrogatives ขรมนั้นเอง และ
ความหมายก็คล้ายคลึงกัน

Note 2. ถ้า **Subjects** ในอนุประโยคเป็นบุคคลคนเดียว หรือของสิ่งเดียวกันกับ **Nouns** หรือ **Pronouns** ในประโยคหลักที่มาข้างหน้าเราตัด **Subjects** นั้นทิ้งไปได้ และเปลี่ยนกริยาเป็น **Infinitives**

- e.g. 1. (**You** showed him. How do **you** do it ?)
You showed him **how** to do it.
2. (He asked **me**. What should **I** do ?)
He asked me **what** to do.
3. (You don't know. **Which** book will you take ?)
You don't know **which** book to take.
4. (**You** must remember **the time**. When do **you** begin it ?)
You must remember **when** to begin it.

Exercises

A. Supply a suitable interrogative link in each of the following sentences:-

Note : ในการทำ **Exercises** ต่อไปนี้ ให้นักเรียนทบทวนความหมายของ **Interrogatives** ต่างๆ ที่เรียนมาแล้ว

- e.g. 1. I have told him book to take.
I have told him **which** book to take.
2. She has forgotten to go.
She has forgotten **where** to go.
1. I don't know to say.
 2. We have no way to do the sum.
 3. Who knows to get the book ?
 4. I asked him to put my shoes.
 5. Can you teach me to drive a car ?
 6. I know her house is.
 7. He will tell you the man is.
 8. We wonder you are so sad.
 9. I don't understand the engine can work.
 10. I can't think she loves him.
 11. Do you know you can trust ?
 12. He has no idea she returns.
 13. The teacher will advise you to answer
the question.
 14. He forgets he left at home.
 15. I can't remember house he lives in.
 16. We don't know bag has been stolen.
 17. He will show you room to sleep in.
 18. Please explain this is done.
 19. Have you heard happened last night ?
 20. I have seen he catches a bird.

Note 3. เราสามารถสร้าง Interrogative Links ในความหมาย
ซึ่งเกี่ยวข้องกับ คุณภาพ (Quality) ปริมาณ (Quantity)
จำนวน (Number) ได้ โดยการเอา Adjectives
หรือ Adverbs ตามความหมายที่ต้องการไปตามหลัง
“how” ดังแบบ;—

how × Adj.(Adv.).

- e.g. 1. I can't tell *how sweet* her voice *is*.
2. I have seen *how big* the snake *is*.
3. He knows *how much* she *loves* him.
4. We have heard *how clearly* he *can teach*.

Exercises

A. Put the words in brackets into the right form:

Note : จงพิจารณาด้วยว่าคำในวงเล็บนั้น ควรเป็น Adjs.
หรือ Advs. ถ้าหมายถึง Nouns หรือ Pronouns
ก็มักจะเป็น Adjs. แต่ถ้าหมายถึง Verbs ก็มักจะเป็น
Advs.

- e.g. 1. Do you know how (wide) the river is?
Do you know how *wide* the river is?
2. I have heard how (kind) he said to me.
I have heard how *kindly* he said to me.

1. I can't tell how (high) the mountain is.
2. I know how (high) he respects you.
3. He will find out how (deep) the ocean is.
4. He cannot find out how (deep) she loves him.
5. I wonder how (real) he may help you.
6. I wonder how (real) the man is.
7. We understand how (bad) she needs money.
8. We understand how (bad) she becomes.
9. We saw how (sad) she was.
10. We saw how (sad) she walked away.

B. *Supply a suitable interrogative link in each of the following sentences :-*

Note : ดู Note 3 และคำถามพยางค์ของ Interrogatives ใน

Ex. A. หน้า 126-128.

- e.g. 1. I cannot tell youpersons were there.
I cannot tell you **how many** persons were there.
2. Nobody knowsthe world will last.
Nobody knows **how long** the world will last.
1. Do you know sisters he has ?
 2. You can't remembertimes I have told you.
 3. I shall let you knowmoney I have at present.
 4. She has told meshe would remain here.

5. Will you please tell me.....children there are in this school?
6. Did she tell you.....she went out with him?
7. I can't remember.....books I have bought this year.
8. Did you tell her.....you love her?
9. I don't know.....the school is from my house.
10. I didn't count.....students were present.
11. Can you tell me.....the distance is from here to your school?
12. We cannot guess.....he has in his pocket.
13. I wonder.....he can do the work.
14. You must find out.....he has run away from school.
15. He asked me.....hope I have for my success.

LESSON 30

Adjectives and Adverbs

Note 1. **Adjectives** เป็นคำวิเศษณ์ซึ่งทำหน้าที่:—

(a) ขยาย Nouns โดยตรง (Attributively) นั้น
ก็คือนำหน้า Nouns ที่ขยายนั่นเอง

- e.g. 1. A **red** rose is lovely.
2. He is an **honourable** man.
3. A **fat** cow gives **good** milk.

(b) ขยาย Nouns หรือ Pronouns โดยปริยาย
(Predicatively) โดยมี Verbs จำพวกหนึ่งมาขึ้น

- e.g. 1. The rose is **red**.
2. The man is **honourable**.
3. Sugar tastes **sweet**.

Note 2. **Adverbs** เป็นคำวิเศษณ์ซึ่งทำหน้าที่ ขยาย Verbs,

Adjectives และ Adverbs เอง

- e.g. 1. The bird flies **quickly**. (ขยาย Verb)
2. I want a pen **now**. (" ")
3. She is **very** pretty. (ขยาย Adj.)
4. He is **really** happy. (" ")

5. The old man works **very** slowly. (ขยาย Adv.)
6. He can do it **quite** easily. („ „)
7. **Surely**, I know it. (ขยายประโยค)
8. **Certainly**, he said the words. („ „)

Note 3. Formation of Adverbs : การเปลี่ยน Adjectives เป็น Adverbs มีดังต่อไปนี้

(a) เติม “ly” ลงท้าย Adjectives

- e.g. 1. He is a **careless** boy.
He works **carelessly**.
2. He said **kind** words.
He said the words **kindly**.

(b) เปลี่ยน “y” เป็น “ily” ท้าย Adjectives ที่ลงท้ายด้วย “y” และหน้า “y” เป็นพยางค์หนึ่ง

- e.g. 1. He is a **happy** man.
He lives here **happily**.
2. She gave me a **heartly** thank.
She thanked me **heartily**.

(c) ตัด “e” ท้าย Adjectives ที่ลงท้ายด้วย “le” ออก แล้วจึงเติม “y”

- e.g. 1. She is a **gentle** woman.
She talks **gently**.
2. He is a **sensible** boy.
He talks **sensibly**.

แต่ 3. The story is **true**.

It is told **truly**.

(d) คำวิเศษณ์ต่อไปนี้มีรูปเหมือนกัน ทั้ง **Adjectives**

และ **Adverbs**

loud, fast, next, hard, back, ill, early, only,
enough, better, much.

Exercises

A. Put the words in brackets into the right form:

e.g. 1. She was very (glad) to see me.

She was very **glad** to see me.

2. I was (glad) welcome into her house.

I was **gladly** welcome into her house.

1. The girl can sing very (sweet).

2. The (naughty) boy threw a stone into the house.

3. She looked (pale) when she saw me.

4. The children shouted at one another (gay).

5. In the afternoon we usually feel (sleepy).

6. She was very (angry) when the boy kicked
her dog.

7. Try not to be (shy) when you speak.

8. It is too (difficult); I cannot do it.

9. He is such a person that eats (heartly).

10. The news sounds (untrue) to me.

11. You will be a (great) man, and (great) honoured
among your people.

12. During the war I escaped death very (narrow).
13. She punished her son (severe).
14. The train runs (fast) because it is a (fast) train.
15. I can't write (correct) but I can speak (good).
16. (Honest), I heard he said so.
17. I had a talk with him (private).
18. All the boys walked into the room (quiet).
19. The king spoke to the people (wise).
20. She spoke to the little boy (gentle).

B. *Supply the correct forms of the words given in bracket :*

Note : ในการเปรียบเทียบปริมาณหรือคุณสมบัติที่
 เทียบกัน เราเอา **Adjectives** หรือ **Adverbs** เดิม
 ลงระหว่าง **as.....as**

- e.g. 1. The morning sky **is** sometimes as (yellow)
 as gold.
 The morning sky **is** sometimes as **yellow**
 as gold.
2. She **smiled** as (merry) as spring.
 She **smiled** as **merrily** as spring.
1. He looks as (awful) as an owl.
 2. How can you use the knife? It is as (blunt)
 as a hammer.

3. The workmen work as (cheerful) as the birds in spring.
4. His daughter is as (beautiful) as the rainbow.
5. He can run as (quick) as quick silver.
6. She treated her children as (kind) as a nurse.
7. The thief came into the room as (soft) as a ghost.
8. The wood is quite shiny, and as (hard) as stone.
9. That queen of beauty looks as (lovely) as Venus.
10. He did the sum as (rapid) as lightning.
11. I saw a snake crawling as (noiseless) as a shadow.
12. That man went up to the gang as (bold) as a lion.

C. *Put the words in brackets into the right form :*

Note : ในการเปรียบเทียบ คุณสมบัติ หรือปริมาณที่
 หย่อนกว่ากันเราใช้ "not so as"

- e.g. 1. I cannot talk so (loud) as he.
 I cannot talk so **loudly** as you.
2. She is not so (careful) as you.
 She is not so **careful** as you.

1. My son is not so (clever) as yours. —
2. The Russian soldiers did not fight so (brave) as the German.

3. He does not love me so (dear) as you.
4. The tiger does not roar so (savage) as the lion.
5. I cannot speak English so (fluent) as an Englishman.
6. She does not appear so (foolish) as you think.
7. I was not excited so (great) as your sister.
8. You cannot play the violin so (skilful) as she.
9. No one is so (bright) as that boy.
10. No body was so (bad) hurt as your brother.

D. *Put the adjectives or adverbs in brackets into the right form:*

Note : ในการเปลี่ยน **Degrees of Comparison** เราเติม

“er” และ “est” ลงท้าย **Adjectives** พยางค์เดียว
แต่ถ้าลงท้ายด้วย “e” อยู่แล้วก็เติมแค่ “r” และ
“st” เท่านั้น **Adjectives** พยางค์เดียว มีสระตัว
เดียวและลงท้ายด้วยพยัญชนะตัวเดียว ต้องเติม
พยัญชนะลงไปอีกตัวหนึ่ง แล้วจึงเติม “er” และ
“est”. **Adjectives** บางตัวลงท้ายด้วย “y” หน้า
“y” เป็นพยัญชนะให้เปลี่ยน “y” เป็น “ier” และ
“iest” ในการเปลี่ยน **Adverbs** ก็ปฏิบัติตามหลัก
เกณฑ์อย่างเดียวกัน นอกจาก **Adjectives** และ
Adverbs ที่มีการเปลี่ยนไม่เป็นไปตามกฎ อย่างเดิม
เติม “the” ลงหน้า **Superlative Adjectives**.

e.g. 1. He is (careless) boy in class.

He is **the most careless** boy in class.

2. Your son can do (well) this year than.
last year,

Your son can do **better** this year than.
last year.

1. Solomon was (wise) of all the kings.

2. This is (difficult) than you think.

3. He made (many) mistakes than I do.

4. I like fishing (much) than hunting,

5. She speaks (clever) than her sister.

6. He is (young) in the family.

7. The result is (bad) than I expected.

8. He was said to be (rich) man in the world.

9. She dressed herself (beautiful) than anyone here.

10. He speaks English (clear) than you.

11. They returned (early) than we had expected.

12. I arrived home (soon) than my sister.

13. You prepare your lessons (careful) of all.

14. He behaved himself (sensible) than I expected.

LESSON 31

Positions of Adverbs

Note 1. ก่อนที่เราจะสามารถวาง **Adverbs** ต่าง ๆ ลงให้ถูกที่ได้
ในการสร้างประโยคนี้ เราต้องศึกษาลักษณะ
ทั่วไปของ **Adverbs** เสียก่อน

(a) **Adverbs of Manner (How ?) :**

Adverbs จำพวกนี้ มีหน้าที่บอกอาการ และเป็น
คำวิเศษณ์ สำหรับตอบคำถาม "**How ?**"

- e.g. 1. He could do the work **easily**. (How ?)
2. She goes to school **regularly**. „
3. The old man sat **quietly**. „

(b) **Adverbs of Time (When ?) :**

Adverbs จำพวกนี้ มีหน้าที่บอกเวลา และเป็น
คำวิเศษณ์ สำหรับตอบคำถาม "**When ?**"

- e.g. 1. I am listening to you **now** (When ?)
2. I met her **lately**. „
3. I see him **everyday**. „

(c) Adverbs of Place (Where?) :

Adverbs จำพวกนี้ มีหน้าที่บอกสถานที่ และเป็น
คำวิเศษณ์ สำหรับตอบคำถาม "Where?"

- e.g. 1. She will come to stay **here**. (where ?)
2. Rarai is standing **there**. "
3. Love is found **everywhere**. "

(d) Adverbs of Frequency (How often?) :

Adverbs จำพวกนี้ มีหน้าที่บอกจำนวนครั้งคราว
และเป็นคำวิเศษณ์ สำหรับตอบคำถาม "How
often?"

- e.g. 1. I **often** go for a walk. (How often ?)
2. He **always** comes here. "
3. She **usually** gets up early. "

(e) Adverbs of Negation :

Adverbs จำพวกนี้มีหน้าที่บอกปฏิเสธ

- e.g. 1. I shall **not** give you anything.
2. He has **never** see me before.
3. They **seldom** go out.

(f) Adverbs of Degree (How ?) :

Adverbs จำพวกนี้ มีหน้าที่บอกปริมาณมาก
น้อยและตอบคำถาม "How.....?" ได้

- e.g. 1. The house is **very** large.
 2. This room is **rather** small.
 3. The time is long **enough**.
 4. He was **nearly** killed during the war.

Exercises

Pick out the adverbs and name their kinds :-

1. Yesterday she laughed at the joke heartily.
2. He tore up the letter angrily.
3. She often smiles sweetly at everyone.
4. He sometimes spoke to me gently.
5. The man once came in quietly.
6. I have twice told her to behave herself properly.
7. She usually stays at home quietly.
8. Although he dressed himself shabbily, he walked proudly.
9. He should never say such a thing again.
10. She cried very loudly there.
11. He generally arrives at school early.
12. Suddenly he burst out laughing wildly.
13. He told me to work calmly and to fight bravely.
14. That boy often acts foolishly.
15. Kindly come to see me personally now.
16. The woman wept bitterly when her husband died suddenly.
17. He had hardly said a word when we met privately.

18. I am badly in need of money now.
19. You will know about it soon.
20. Today you cannot do the exercises correctly.

Note 2. **Adverbs** ต่าง ๆ บางทีก็ประกอบด้วยหลาย ๆ คำ และ
มีความหมายจำแนกออกเป็นพวก ๆ ตามที่กล่าวมาแล้ว

Adverbs เหล่านี้ เรียกว่า **Adverb Phrases**.

- e.g.

1. He treated me <i>with kindness</i>. 2. I thank you <i>with all my heart</i>.	}	Manner
1. His house was <i>on the top of the hill</i>. 2. She is sitting <i>in the room</i>.	}	Place
1. I was in Bangkok <i>before the war</i>. 2. He was sleeping <i>at the moment</i>.	}	Time

Exercises

Study the following sentences and then underline the **adverb phrases**.

1. I haven't seen you for a long time.
2. In general he returns home late.
3. We must work hard as usual.
4. He will return the money without doubt.
5. The boy is always behind time.
6. You must come before time.
7. He sat at the back of the class.
8. I received your letter with surprise.

9. I thank you very much for your kind letter.
10. Now he is writing at the table.
11. Europeans live on bread and butter.
12. Please wait for me here for a few minutes.

Note 3. ตำแหน่งของ **Adverbs** เป็นเรื่องที่หน้าสนใจมาก ถึงแม้ว่าจะมีความซับซ้อนมากกว่าคำอื่นๆ ในการสร้างประโยคก็ตาม ก็พอจะสรุปหลักเกณฑ์ไว้ได้ดังต่อไปนี้ :-

(a) ตำแหน่งของ **Adverbs** ส่วนมากอยู่ท้ายประโยค เรียงกันตามลำดับ ดังต่อไปนี้ :-

(1) Manner (2) Place (3) Time

- e.g.
1. He is sitting **happily, there, now.**
 2. I stayed **alone, at home, last year.**
 3. She dressed herself **in a hurry, in her room, at the time.**

(b) **Adverbs of Time** : มาหน้าประโยคได้เพื่อการเน้น

- e.g.
1. **Soon** we shall hear the news.
 2. **Only last night** I met her.
 3. **Next week** I am going away.

Adverbs of Time ตามธรรมเนียมมักจะวางเรียงกันตามลำดับจากน้อยไปหามาก

- e.g. 1. He will arrive *early, on Sunday, next week.*
2. She left home *at 6 o'clock, in the evening, on 1st January, 1960.*
3. I was born *at 10 p.m., on October 15th, in the year 1960.*

(c) **Adverb of Place** : Adverbs จำพวกนี้มักจะมาติดกันกับกริยาที่แสดงการเคลื่อนที่ (Verbs of movement) เสมอ

- e.g. 1. A snake crawled *into my room.*
2. The hen ran *into its pen.*
3. I am walking *to the end of the lane.*

Adverbs of Place ก็วางเรียงกันตามลำดับจากน้อยไปหามากเหมือนกัน

- e.g. 1. He lives *at 16, Petchburi Rd., Bangkok, Thailand.*
2. I stayed *at the hotel, in Chiang Mai, on the North of Thailand.*

(d) **Adverbs of Frequency or Negation :**

Adverbs จำพวกนี้มาหน้ากริยาสำคัญ แต่มาร

ตามหลัง Verb "be"

- e.g. 1. He **seldom** makes a mistake.
2. I have **once** seen the man.
3. I shall be **always** true to you.
4. She can **hardly** understand you.
5. He has **never** seen you before.

Exercises

A. Answer the following sentences, using the adverbs given in brackets :-

- e.g. 1. When did you hear of him ? (last night)
I heard of him **last night**.
2. How often does she go out at night ? (seldom)
She **seldom** goes out at night.
1. When will you finish the work ? (next month)
2. How often does he write you ? (once a month)
3. How did she sing the song ? (beautifully)
4. Do you often drink wine ? (never)
5. Why couldn't you come to school ?
(because of rain)
6. Where have you been ? (to the seaside)

7. When did the rain cease ? (after a while)
8. How did they promise to help you ? (earnestly)
9. How did the policeman shout at you ? (loudly)
10. When will my letter be answered ? (shortly)
11. Where shall I wait for you ? (at the corner)
12. For how long will you remain here ?
(for a long time)
13. At what time does he return home ? (usually, late)
14. When will they have finished the work ?
(by next week)
15. Have you ever seen such a lovely sight ? (never)
16. How often do you speak English ? (always)
17. Have you brought the book with you ?
(not, today)
18. Did he come in time ? (yesterday, behind time)

B. *Insert the given adverbs in the proper place :*

e.g. I am going (for a month, to Hua Hin, tomorrow).

I am going to Hua Hin for a month tomorrow.

1. You can meet me (at the office, tomorrow, at noon).
2. Raraj was studying (at school, hard, last year).
3. I worked (all day, alone, at home).
4. He comes (to class, seldom, on time).
5. She gives me a smile (usually, in the morning).
6. He closed the door (quietly, when he went to bed, last night).

7. The lady removed (after the husband's death, to some other place, out of the town).
8. We don't work (always, on Sunday).
9. I go to pictures (often, when I am free).
10. I have seen him (never, again, since he left school, in the year 1956).
11. We met her (on the way, at 2 o'clock, in the year 1960, on March 12th).
12. I have arrived (just, here.)
13. They go (for a walk, every Sunday, in the morning, usually).
14. Do you prepare your lesson (always, carefully, before time)?

LESSON 32

Infinitives

Note 1. **Infinitives** คืออะไรนั้น เราได้ทราบมาแล้วตาม

Note 3. (a) หน้า 91 ในบทที่เราจะกล่าวถึง รูป

(Forms) หน้า ๗๑ (Functions) และ ความหมาย
(Meanings) ของ **Infinitives** โดยเฉพาะ

(a) **Forms of Infinitives**: รูป **Infinitives** ที่ควร
ศึกษาในระยะนี้ คือ:—

Active

Passive

Simple: to kill.

to be killed,

Perfect: to have killed.

to have been killed.

e.g. 1. He wanted to kill the tiger. (Act.)

He wanted the tiger to be killed. (Pass.)

2. He ordered me to do the work. (Act.)

He ordered the work to be done by me.

(Pass.)

3. He seems to have done the work. (Act.)

The work seems to have been done by him.

(Pass.)

Simple Infinitives เช่น ข้อ 1 และ 2 หมายความว่า
 การกระทำของ **Infinitives** และกริยาของประโยคเกิด
 ขึ้นในเวลาเดียวกัน แต่ **Perfect Infinitives** เช่นข้อ 3
 เกิดขึ้นก่อนกริยาของประโยค

Exercises

A. *Supply a suitable infinitive in each of the following:*

Note: **Infinitives** ที่มาจากกริยาช่วยใน Exercises ต่อไป

นี้ ไม่มี "to" นำ ดู Note 4. ข้อ (d), (e), และ (f)

หน้า 93

- e.g. 1. Can you me some money ?
 Can you **lend** me some money ?
2. He doesn't your explanation.
 He doesn't **understand** your explanation.
1. May I home before time ?
 2. The sun doesn't today.
 3. Will you your book ?
 4. You should him the truth.
 5. I'm sorry; I can't you.
 6. You may what you like.
 7. I shall America next year.
 8. He will certainly the exam.
 9. I didn't him about it.

10. You dare not.....into the river.
11. You need not.....hard because you are rich.
12. She could.....as you wish.
13. He might.....her if she asked him.
14. You should.....hard if you want to be rich.
15. His teacher said he would.....the naughty boy.
16. You must.....for me until I return.
17. Dose you.....the haunted house alone ?
18. When shall I.....here again ?
19. Need you.....English when you are in England ?
20. He did the words when he was there.
21. You cannot home before time.
22. He must his name at the bottom of the page.
23. I can out where you live.
24. She would and dream all day long.
25. You will certainly English if you love it.

B. Answer the following questions in full :

Note : Infinitives ที่มาตามกริยาต่อไปนี้ ก็ไม่ต้องมี "to" นำเหมือนกัน

- e.g. 1. Does the teacher **make** him **work** hard ?
 Yes, he **makes** him **work** hard.
 No, he doesn't **make** him **work** hard.

1. Did you hear him speak ?
2. Did he see me arrive this morning ?
3. Who let you leave so early ?
4. Who is watching the children play ?
5. Will you please let me sit here ?
6. Do you feel the house shake ?
7. Who (whom) did you see enter the house ?
8. When did you hear him call me ?
9. Who made you run ?
10. When will you let me know about it ?

C. *Supply a suitable infinitive in each of the following :*

Note : Infinitives ^๕ ทมาจาก Transitive Verbs ^๕ กัดของมี

Objects ^๕ มาตาม ความหมายจึงจะสมบูรณ์

- e.g. 1. The teacher taught me English.
The teacher taught me **to read** English.
2. We eat
We eat **to live**.

1. He asked me not it.
2. His father told him hard.
3. I asked her the door.
4. He made me the work.
5. I heard him out.
6. He wanted his own house.
7. She promised him for ever.
8. Her mother won't let her late.

9. We agree.....the book as a reader.
10. He won't allow his son.....his time.
11. It is natural.....a mistake.
12. I shall write a letter..... you know in due course.

D. *Supply a suitable preposition in each of the following sentences :-*

Note : **Infinitives** ซึ่งมาจาก **Verbs** ที่ต้องการ **Propositions** อะไร ก็ต้องตามด้วย **Prepositions** นั้นโดย

เฉพาะตามความหมายของประโยค

- e.g. 1. Why is she going to send a doctor ?
Why is she going to send *for* a doctor ?
2. I don't want to agree him.
I don't want to agree *with* him.
1. What do you want to ask?
 2. Nobody wishes to fail the exam.
 3. Will you please excuse me being late ?
 4. Do you like to quarrel me ?
 5. She is going to wait you there.
 6. I would like to hear you soon.
 7. I hope to get in Bangkok before time.
 8. He has nothing to do me.
 9. She told me to work the sum carefully.
 10. She asked me to listen her.

11. I shall try to find the cause of your failure.
12. Is it right to make him work you ?
13. He knows how to get himself the trouble.
14. The teacher has explained how to begin this lesson.
15. I have told you to leave every unnecessary word.

Note 3. **Uses of Infinitives :**

เราใช้ Infinitives ในการสร้างประโยคดังต่อไปนี้ :-

(a) **Subjects :**

- e.g. 1. *To see* is to be believed.
 2. *To make mistakes* is natural.
 3. *To tell a lie* is a sin.

แต่ส่วนมากเขานิยมใช้ "It" แทน Infinitive (Phrase) โดยเอา Infinitive (Phrase) นั้นไปไว้ท้ายท้ายประโยค

- e.g. 1. *It* is impossible to live alone.
 2. *It* is natural to make mistakes.
 3. *It* is a sin to tell a lie.

(b) **Objects :**

- e.g. 1. I want **to sit** here.
 2. He forgets **to return** the money.
 3. She promised **to help** you.

(c) **Adjectives :**

- e.g. 1. This is the book **to read**.
 2. The house **to let** is overthere.
 3. She has no work **to do**.

(d) **Adverbs :**

- e.g. 1. I come **to see** you.
 2. She is quick **to learn**.
 3. He went early **to catch** the train.

Exercises

A. *From the given verbs supply a suitable infinitive in each of the following:-*

Note : **Infinitive** คือไปขึ้นทำหน้าทีเป็น **Subjects** แปลว่า

“การ

be, pass, hope, prefer, think, smoke, err,
 teach, go, swim, live.

e.g.rich is his only aim.

To be rich is his only aim

1. to bed early makes us healthy.
2. often causes bad health.
3. is human.
4. nothing is to like nothihg.
5. for something usually makes a man happy.
6. the exam. is her greatest wish.
7. all round is good before doing anytning.
8. is a very good form of exercises.
9. means to struggle for life.
10. wise requires a great study.

B. *Supply a suitable infinitive or infinitive phrase in each of the following :-*

Note : **Infinitives** คือไปหน้าหน้าที่เป็น **Objects** ของกริยา

e.g. I prefer

I prefer to live alone.

1. She promised.....
2. They will agree.....
3. Who wishes ?
4. He pretends
5. I hope
6. Have you decided ?
7. When do you begin ?
8. We love
9. They like
10. Nobody wants

4. I shall come
5. I happened
6. The boy ran fast
7. He walks
8. We live
9. They work hard
10. He shouted loud

E. *Complete the following sentences :-*

Note : Infinitives คือไป^๕ทำ^๖หน้า^๗เป็น Adverbs ขยาย
Adjectives.

e.g. I am very sorry

I am very sorry *to hear of your failure.*

1. She is very happy
2. Are you glad ?
3. The king was very wise
5. The chair is quite comfortable
6. He is sure
7. She was really surprised
8. We were quite excited
9. The book is very interesting
10. The water is not enough

LESSON 33

Gerund

Note 1. Gerunds คือ Verbs ที่ลงท้ายด้วย "ing" และทำหน้าที่
ทุกอย่าง Nouns :—

(a) Subjects :

- e.g. 1. *Seeing* is believing.
2. *Telling* a lie is a bad practice.
3. *Smoking* often spoils health.

(b) Objects after certain Verbs :

- e.g. 1. He stopped *talking* nonsense.
2. We enjoyed *bathing*.
3. He will deny breaking the glass.

(c) Objects after prepositions :

1. He is fond of *reading*.
2. I am waiting for his *coming*.
3. We are interested in *doing* the work.

Note 2. Possessive Adjectives ขยาย Gerunds ได้

- e.g. 1. I am waiting for *his coming*.
2. Do you mind *my sitting* here?
3. You must stop *his going* out.

Note 3. **Forms of Gerund :**

เพราะ Gerunds มีรูปมาจาก Verbs ฉะนั้นจึงมีรูป
เป็นได้ทั้ง Active และ Passive.

<i>Tense</i>	<i>Active</i>	<i>Passive.</i>
Present	playing	being played.
Perfect	having played	having been played.

เราใช้ Present Gerunds ในความหมายทั่วไป และ
เราใช้ Perfect Gerunds ในความหมายที่แสดงว่าการกระทำ
นั้นเกิดขึ้นก่อนกริยาของประโยค

- e.g. 1. I remember **seeing** her once.
2. I remember **being** seen by her once.
3. I remember **having** seen her.
4. I remember **having** been seen by her.

Exercises

A. Supply a suitable gerund or gerund phrase in each of the following:-

Note : จงศึกษาและจดจำกริยาในประโยคต่อไปนี้ เพราะ
กริยาเหล่านี้ต้องการ Gerunds มาตาม

- e.g. He enjoyed
He enjoyed **swimming** very much.

1. He doesn't mind
2. I have finished
3. We are going to stop
4. He denied
5. She didn't mind
6. Would you risk ?
7. How can we avoid ?
8. She admitted
9. I can't stand
10. They like
11. We love
12. She can't help
13. Everyone hates
14. Have you finished ?
15. The boy still remember

B. *Fill in each blank first with an infinitive and then with a gerund:-*

Note : กริยาต่อไปนี้ทั้ง Infinitives และ Gerunds มาตาม
ได้ โดยที่ความหมายไม่เปลี่ยนแปลง

e.g. I like **to study** English.

I like **studying** English.

1. She still continues
2. I prefer
3. He intended
4. Does he like ?

5. He will start.....
6. I have begun.....
7. Do you love.....?
8. We dislike.....
9. I hate.....
10. Did they continue.....?

C. Supply a suitable **gerund** in each of the following:-

e.g. He is afraid of

He is afraid of **wasting money**.

1. There is little hope of.....
2. I am very fond of.....
3. He is not interested in.....
4. Have you any reason for.....?
5. I am thinking of.....
6. She was used to.....
7. I thank you for.....
8. Are you tired of.....?
9. The boy is in the habit of.....
10. They had no intention of.....
11. The child slept instead of.....
12. No one can live without.....

LESSON 34

Participle

Note 1. **Participles** แบ่งออกเป็นหมวดใหญ่ๆ มีรูปและชื่อ
ต่อไปนี้:—

<i>Participles</i>	<i>Active</i>	<i>Passive.</i>
Present	seeing	being seen
Past.	—	seen
Perfect	having seen	having been seen

Note 2. **Uses of Participles :**

เราทราบแล้วว่า **Participles** มีรูปมาจากกริยา ฉะนั้น
มันจะต้องหมายความถึง **Nouns** หรือ **Pronouns** ตัวหนึ่ง
ตัวใดเป็นแน่ ซึ่งอยู่ในประโยคเดียวกัน

- e.g. 1. **Seeing** a tiger, **he** ran away.
2. A **child knocked** down by a car lay still.
3. I saw a **man running** out of the house.

(a) **Present Participles :** คือ **Verbs** ที่ลงท้ายด้วย
“ing” เหมือนกันกับ **Gerund** แต่มันหน้าที่ทำให้เกิด **Conti-**
nuous Tenses ขึ้น

- e.g. 1. You are *listening* to me now.
 2. She was *sleeping* at the time.
 3. It has been *raining* hard.

และขยาย Nouns หรือ Pronouns ทั้งโดยตรงและโดยปริ
 ยาย คัดย Adjectives ในความหมายที่เป็น Active sense

- e.g. 1. There is a *singing bird* in the tree.
 2. The old man has a *walking stick*.
 3. *She* came *running* to me.
 4. The poor *lady* burst out *crying*.
 5. A *man standing* up shouted at me.

(b) Past Participles : เป็นชื่อของกริยาช่อง 3 ดู Note
 หน้า 163 และ Note 2 หน้า 164 มีหน้าที่ทำให้เกิด
 Perfect Tenses ขัน

- e.g. 1. I have *seen* him.
 2. He has *gone* to school.
 3. She has *left* school then.

และเป็นองค์ประกอบที่สำคัญในการทำ Passive Voice

- e.g. 1. This book is *used* in schools.
 2. The work has been *done*.
 3. The letter will be *posted* tomorrow.

will be tomorrow.

ทำหน้าที่ขยาย **Nouns** หรือ **Pronouns** อย่าง **Adjectives**
ทั้งทางตรงและโดยปริยายได้อีกด้วย ในความหมายที่เป็น
Passive sense

- e.g. 1. The **broken chair** has been mended.
2. He will sell the **painted picture**.
3. The **book taken** from the library has not yet been returned.
4. I heard **Tom scolded** by the teacher.
5. The **woman** appears **worried**.
6. The house look **unfinished**.

(c) **Perfect Participles** : ประกอบด้วย "having" ตามด้วย **Past Participles** เราใช้ **Perfect Participles** ก็ด้วยความรู้สึกใคร่จะแสดงให้ผู้อื่นทราบว่ากรกระทำใน **Participles** นั้น เกิดก่อนและสมบูรณ์แล้วก่อนกริยาของประโยค

- e.g. 1. **Having written** a letter, he posted it.
2. **Having bought** the book, he returned home.
3. **Having been spoken** to, she was happy.

Exercises

A. Rewrite the italicized clause, using a participial construction :-

Note : จงสังเกตว่า **Verbs** ใน **Clauses** เป็น **Active** หรือ

Passive ถ้าเป็น Active ที่ใช้ Present Participles

และถ้าเป็น Passive ที่ใช้ Past Participles

e.g. 1. *When she saw me*, she smiled.

Seeing me, she smiled.

2. The egg, *which was laid by the hen*, is broken.

The egg, *laid by the hen*, is broken.

3. *After I had taken breakfast*, I left home.

Having taken breakfast, I left home.

1. When he arrived home, he saw no one there.
2. He could not go to work because he was ill.
3. I found my purse, which was left in the desk.
4. When he had gone to bed, he heard a knock at the door.
5. The man who is standing over there is my brother.
6. He was very tired because he had worked all day.
7. The letter which had been posted had no stamp on it.
8. The flower, which was plucked by the girl is already faded.
9. The man who was smoking is an Englishman.
10. I bought it because I am in need of it.
11. He finally found his car which had been stolen.

12. The tree which grows in the garden is a fruit-tree.
13. The tree which was cut by you was a mango tree.
14. I met a man who was carrying a donkey on his back.
15. I give it to you because I love you.
16. He saw a fine bunch of grapes, which hung from a vine.
17. The teacher who teaches English is an English man.
18. As soon as he learnt that his brother was in trouble, he rushed out to his aid.
19. The animal which was shot by the hunter was a tiger.
20. She asked for food because she was very hungry.

B. *Put the verbs in brackets into the correct participle :-*

- e.g. 1. The child (run) there is my son.
The child **running** there is my son.
2. The book (print) is an English Grammar.
The book **being printed** is an English Grammar.
3. The watch (mend) could work well.
Having been mended, the watch could work well.
1. The man (play) the piano was a Malay.
 2. The composition (write) by Rarai won the first prize.

3. I saw her (cross) the road.
4. I saw her (beat) by her mother.
5. (Finish) homework, he went to bed.
6. The Committee spent three hours (discus) the matter.
7. We like food (cook) by Mother.
8. (Walk) into the garden, I found a flower pot (break).
9. I left my book (lie) on the table.
10. Did you hear Rarai (start) ?

LESSON 35

Direct and Indirect Speech

Note : การรายงานหรือแจ้งเรื่องราวใด ๆ ให้ผู้อื่นทราบ มีการกระทำอยู่สองวิธี :-

(a) เขาคำพูดของผู้คนมากคำว โดยไม่มีการเปลี่ยนแปลงใด ๆ เรียกว่า **Direct Speech**

- e.g. 1. Mary said, "I am not well."
2. Rarai said, "I have a head-ache."
3. He said to me, "You must come here again."

(b) เราสามารถรายงานให้ผู้อื่นทราบได้ข้อวิธีหนึ่ง โดยการเปลี่ยนคำพูดเหล่านั้น มาเป็นคำพูดของเราเสีย เรียกว่า **Indirect Speech**

- e.g. 1. Mary said that she was not well.
2. Rarai said that she had a head-ache.
3. He told me that I had to go there again.

Note : **How to Change Direct into indirect Speech :**

เราเปลี่ยน Direct Speech ให้เป็น Indirect Speech
ได้ ดังต่อไปนี้

(a) **Statements :** ในการเปลี่ยนประโยค Statements
ให้เป็น Indirect Speech เราต้อง

1. เติม Conj. "that" ลงหน้าคำพูดในเครื่องหมายคำพูด
2. เมื่อกริยาในประโยคนำเป็น Past กริยาในเครื่องหมายคำพูด ก็ต้องเปลี่ยนเป็น Past ตามลำดับ Tenses ด้วย
3. เปลี่ยน "to say to" เป็น "to tell"
4. เมื่อกริยาในเครื่องหมายคำพูดเป็น Past อยู่แล้ว ก็เปลี่ยนให้เป็น Past Perfect ตามเหตุผล

- e.g. 1. He said, "I am going out."
He said that he was going out.
2. He said to me, "I love you."
He told me that he loved me.

3. He said, "I liked London."

He told me that he liked London.

4. He said, "I saw her once."

He said that he had seen her once.

Exercises

A. Change from Direct to Indirect Speech:-

Note : ต้องเปลี่ยนบุรุษต่างๆ ในเครื่องหมายคำพูดให้สอดคล้องกันกับบุรุษนอกเครื่องหมายคำพูดด้วย

e.g. She said to me, "I know you and your father."
She told me that she knew **me** and **my** father."

1. James said, "I am looking for a job"
2. Jane said to me, "You must wait for me here."
3. He said, "I am not going to sit for the exam."
4. She said to me, "I am in need of your help."
5. The old man said, "I have no money and I need food."
6. The teacher said, "You are supposed to be here at eight o'clock."
7. He said to me, "You don't look well"
8. I said to him, "You must finish the work before going home."
9. He said, "I came to school before you."
10. My William said, "I like you and your people very much."

B. *Change from Direct to Indirect Speech:-*

Note : ถ้าข้อความในเครื่องหมายคำพูดเป็นจริงตลอดกาล
หรือเป็นนิยัตยธรรมคาธรรมชาติ กริยาต้องเป็น

Present Simple Tense.

e.g. He said "Honesty is the best policy."

He said that honesty is the best policy.

1. It is said, "A friend in need is a friend indeed."
2. The priest said, "Centenment is the source of peace and happiness."
3. The teacher said, "Without the sun no man can live."
4. She said to him, "I believe you because you are honest."
5. I said to her, "Real beauty exists in both body and mind."

(b) **Questions :** ในการเปลี่ยนประโยคคำถามให้เป็น
Indirect Speech เราต้องเปลี่ยนรูปประโยคให้เป็น
บอกเล่า และใช้ **Interrogatives** นั้น ให้เป็น
Relatives.

e.g. 1. I asked. "Where do you lived."

I asked where he lived ?

2. He asked me, "Who are you ?"

He asked me who I was.

แต่ถ้าประโยคคำถามนั้นนำด้วยกริยาช่วย เราต้อง

ใช้ "if" หรือ "whether" เป็นเครื่องหมายเชื่อม

- e.g. 1. I asked him, "Do you like Bangkok."
I asked him if he liked Bangkok.
2. He asked me, "Are you homesick?"
He asked me whether I was homesick.

Exercises

Change from Direct to Indirect Speech:-

- e.g. I asked him, "How long will you remain her?"
I asked him how long he would remain her.
1. She said to me, "Do you love me?"
 2. I asked him, "How do you like the pictures?"
 3. The teacher said to the students, "Do you understand the exercises?"
 4. They asked me, "When are you leaving for America?"
 5. I asked her, "Are you going to pictures with me tonight?"
 6. She said, "Why don't you go alone?"
 7. He asked the teacher, "What does the word mean?"
 8. He asked me, "What do two and two make?"
 9. They said, "Can a man go to the moon?"
 10. She asked you, "Which way can I go to the station?"

- (c) **Commands** : ในการเปลี่ยน **Direct Speech** ที่ เป็น **orders** (คำสั่ง) หรือ **Commands** (บัญชา) ให้เป็น **Indirect Speech** เราเปลี่ยน "said" เป็น "told" หรือ "ordered" หรือ "Commanded" แล้วแต่ความเหมาะสมของความหมาย และทำกริยาเป็น **Infinitives**.

e.g. 1. The teacher said, "Don't come to school late"

The teacher told me not to come to school late.

2. The captain ordered the soldiers, "Fight to the last man."

Exercises

Change from Direct to Indirect Speech :-

e.g. My father said, "Don't go out tonight ?"

My father told me not to go out that night.

1. Rarai said to me, "Wait for me here."
2. The teacher asked them, "Be more careful."
3. He warned me, "Be careful when you cross the road."
4. She said to the boy, "Don't make the same mistake again."

5. He wrote a letter to his father, "Please send me some money."
6. I asked them, "Try to come on time"
7. He begged me, "Please write a letter to me some time."
8. They asked me, "Kindly let me know about it soon."
9. She said to her husband, "Get out, I don't want to see you."
10. She said to her son, "Don't waste your time and money."

Composition

1

The Lizard and the Tortoise

Once upon a time the tortoise went to the village to get a bag of salt. He tied the bag of salt to a long string because his hands were so short. Then he put the string over his neck and began to go to his home, pulling the bag of salt.

The lizard was sitting outside his house. He saw the tortoise, and the tortoise was pulling along his bag of salt. The lizard said nothing, but when the tortoise was not looking he went along behind him, cut the string, took the bag of salt, and kept it.

When the tortoise found that his salt was not coming along behind him he went to look for it, and he soon found the lizard who was holding the bag. He said, "I have lost my bag of salt. Have you taken my salt?" "No" said the lizard, "I was going along the road when I saw this bag of salt. You were not carrying it, I just picked it up, You didn't lose it, did you?"

Some time afterwards the tortoise was going along the road when he saw the lizard. The lizard was eating some white ants inside their nest and his tail was lying in the road. The tortoise picked up the tail and pulled it off. "What are you doing?" cried the lizard. You have pulled off my tail." "I don't think so," answered the tortoise. "I was going along the road when I saw this

tail. It was just lying in the road and I picked it up.
It isn't yours, is it?"

Taken from the Oxford
English Course for
Malaya.

Exercises

Expand the following outlines and finish them as you please.

(1) A shepherd boy looking after his sheep
.....amuses himself by shouting "Wolf, Wolf!"
.....the trick works.....the men heard him.....
they rush to help him.....they see only the boy laughing
at them.....they stop taking notice of his joke.....
a wolf really comes.....the boy runs towards the village
.....the villagers think the boy amuses himself.....
the wolf kills many of the sheep.

(2) A dog with a piece of meat in his mouth.....
crosses a plank over a stream.....sees his reflection
.....thinks this another dog.....wishes to have both
pieces of meat.....snaps at the shadow.....opens his
mouth.....the meat falls into the stream.....at last gets
nothing.

(3) Tom goes to the graveyard.....it is dark.....he is frightened.....sits down on a grave.....drives his knife into the grave.....gets up.....feels something pulling him back to the grave.....is very frightened.....thinks that he is caught by a ghost.....in fact he sticks his knife through his clothes and pins himself to the grave.

(4) Tell the story of the Clever Crow.

(5) Tell the story of how a thief came to your house and was caught at last.

Composition

2

A Visit

One day during the rice-growing season I went to visit my uncle who lives in Ayuthya. On the way I saw many rice fields. My uncle was very kind, and he showed me many things which I found new and interesting.

First of all he showed me a plough. A plough is a machine which breaks up the earth. Many people break up the earth with a hoe, and they find this work very

slow and tiring. It takes them many days to break up one field, and they get very tired as they do this work. If you use a plough you can do a great deal of work in a very short time. When you have broken the ground with a plough or with a hoe. You can begin to plant your seeds.

Besides my uncle has many different kinds of crops useful for food. On the land near the river he has a good crop of rice and a big patch of sugar cane, and he planted a great deal of Indian corn. He has also sown beans and many other kinds of vegetables. He always gets good crops because he breaks up the ground carefully and well before planting, and he always uses good seed.

His children keep a great many ducks and hens. They have always given them a clean house, good fresh food, and plenty of clean water. For many years they sent hundreds of eggs to the market where they are sold to people who live in the town, and they get a great deal of money for their eggs.

After I had seen the hens, I saw a herd of buffaloes. These animals were very strong and fat because they had always eaten good food. My uncle said to me, "The man who looks after them has always taken great care of them. He often takes them to the river to bathe. He will get a great deal of money when he sells them."

Exercises

Write short essays on :-

1. A visit to your relative up country.
2. Sceneries of a country-side.
3. A journey by rail.
4. The life of a farmer.
5. How country people earn their living.

Composition

3

Read and study these letters :-

25, Petchaburi Road,

Bangkok.

10 th March, 1962.

Dear Father,

I think you will be surprised to get a letter from me in English. Of course I am doing it because I want to get some practice for the examination, which is getting very near now. I thought also that you should perhaps like to see how well, or how badly, I can write in a foreign language.

As I told you in my last letter the school is closing for the holidays on 24 th March, 1962 and I hope

to catch a train to Rajaburi on the next day. I expect to get at Rajaburi about noon on this day. I hope you or anyone will be able to meet me at the station.

I have enjoyed myself very much at school this term, and I am sorry that next term will be my last in this school. I have read quite a lot of library books. Last night we were allowed to go to the cinema, because the film, "Tom Sawyer" was made from one of the books we are reading for the examination. It was very amusing to see things we had read about so often really happening in front of our eyes.

I must not write any more now, as I have all my packing to do. In any case I shall be seeing you and hearing all you have been doing.

Please give my love to all at home, especially Mother.

Yours affectionately,

Rarai.

12, Sujahpirom,

Rajaburi.

11th March, 1962.

Dearest Rarai,

Thank you for your letter. I am afraid I shall not be able to meet your train on the 25th because there is a meeting at the Municipality on that day, and as you

know, those meetings nearly always go on nearly the whole day. Somjai will be free, I shall send him to meet you at the station.

I thought the English of your letter was very good, and I showed it to my friend the Headmaster of the school here. He said it would get full marks at once. Though I did not believe him, I thought it was kind of him, and that you would be encouraged to hear what he said. As you see, I am answering you in the same language, partly to give you practice in reading, and partly to show you that although it is already twenty years since I was at school, I can still do some of the thing you do.

All the family are looking forward to seeing you very much and hearing all about what you have been doing. Your Mother sends her love. I believe she is planning to cook something very nice, which you specially like, on the 25 th, so don't do any thing silly, like missing the train.

Yours affectionately,
Father.

Note : จงสังเกตรูปของจดหมายต่อไปนี้

1. Heading : คำล่ที่อยู่ของผู้เขียน
2. Date : วันที่
3. Salutation : คำขึ้นต้น
4. The body of letter : ตัวจดหมาย
5. Conclusion : คำลงท้าย
6. Signature : ลายมือ

Exercises

Write a letter to:-

- (a) Your brother telling him how you enjoyed yourself on the New Year Day.
- (b) Your friend in America asking him about New York City in which he is now staying.
- (c) Your teacher asking for a leave of absence.



